



# Contents A-Z

## OWNER'S MANUAL.

MINI.





## **MINI** **Owner's Manual for Vehicle**

Thank you for choosing a MINI.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new MINI. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your MINI. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your MINI.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the Vehicle.

Get started now. We wish you driving fun and inspiration with your MINI

The MINI team of BMW AG

© 2015 Bayerische Motoren Werke  
Aktiengesellschaft  
Munich, Germany  
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written  
consent of BMW AG, Munich.  
US English II/15, 03 15 490  
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached  
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.



## ADDENDUM TO OWNER'S MANUAL

We wanted to provide you with some updates and clarifications with respect to the printed MINI Owner's Manual. These updates and clarifications will supersede the materials contained in that document.

1. Where the terms “service center,” “the service center,” “your service center,” “service specialist,” or “service” are used in the Owner's Manual, we wanted to clarify that the terms refer to a MINI dealer's service center or another service center or repair shop that employs trained personnel that can perform maintenance and repair work on your vehicle in accordance with MINI specifications.
2. Where the text of the Owner's Manual contains an affirmative instruction to contact a “service center” or “your service center,” we wanted to clarify that MINI recommends that, if you are faced with one of the situations addressed by that text, you contact or seek the assistance of a MINI dealer's service center or another service center or repair shop that employs trained personnel that can perform maintenance and repair work on your vehicle in accordance with MINI specifications.

While MINI, at no cost to you, will pay for repairs required by the limited warranties provided with respect to your vehicle and for maintenance under the Maintenance Program during the applicable warranty and maintenance coverage periods, you are free to elect, both during those periods and thereafter, to have maintenance and repair work provided by other service centers or repair shops.

3. Where the Owner's Manual makes reference to parts and accessories having been approved by MINI, those references are intended to reflect that those parts and accessories are recommended by MINI. You may elect to use other parts and accessories, but, if you do, we recommend that you make sure

that any such parts and/or accessories are appropriate for use on your vehicle.

4. At page 7, under the warranty section's discussion of homologation, where it states that you “cannot lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there,” the text should read that you “may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there.”
5. At page 7, in the “Parts and Accessories” section, the sentence beginning “For your own safety, use ... ,” should be disregarded and the following text should be read in lieu thereof: “The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends using genuine MINI parts and accessories.”  
In the fifth sentence of that paragraph, the word “cannot” should read “does not.”
6. At page 38, in the “Check and replace safety belts” section, the text beginning, “This should only be done by your service center ...” should be disregarded and the following text should be read in lieu thereof: “MINI recommends having this work performed by a service center as it is important that this safety feature functions properly.”
7. At page 135 under the heading: “Objects in the area around the pedals” and at page 219 under the heading: “Carpets and floor mats,” the paragraph that begins: “Only use floor mats ...” should be disregarded and the following language should be read in lieu thereof: “The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you use floor mats that have been identified by it as appropriate for use in your vehicle and that can be properly fixed in place.”
8. At page 142, under the heading: “Have maintenance carried out,” the sentence beginning, “Have the maintenance carried out ...” should be disregarded and the following text should be read in lieu thereof: “MINI recommends that you have the maintenance carried out by your service center.”

9. At page 162, under “Bluetooth Hands-Free System,” the heading that reads “Approved mobile phones” should read “Recommended mobile phones.”
10. At page 176, under the heading “Pressure specifications,” the sentence beginning, “Pressure specifications apply to approved tire sizes ...” should be disregarded.
11. At page 183, under the heading: “Mounting,” the paragraph beginning, “Have mounting and balancing ...” should be disregarded and the following text should be read in lieu thereof: “MINI recommends that you have mounting and balancing performed by your service center or a tire mounting specialist.”
12. At page 183, under the heading: “Approved wheels and tires,” the term “Approved” should be disregarded and in lieu thereof, the term “Recommended” should be read in its place. In addition, the text of that section should be disregarded and the following text should be read in lieu thereof:
- The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type; otherwise, for example, despite having the same official size ratings, variations can lead to body contact and with it, the risk of severe accidents.
- The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate non-recommended wheels and tires to determine if they are suitable for use on your vehicle.
13. At page 188, under the heading: “Snow Chains,” the paragraph beginning, “Only certain fine-link snow chains ...” should be disregarded and the following text should be read in lieu thereof:
- Only certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of your vehicle and are determined by the manufacturer of your vehicle to be road safe and are recommended by the manufacturer of your vehicle.
- Information about recommended snow chains is available from a service center.
14. At page 190, under the heading “Hood,” the sentence beginning, “If you are unfamiliar” should be disregarded.
15. At page 194, under the heading: “Engine oil change,” the text should be disregarded and in lieu thereof should be read as follows:
- MINI recommends that you have the oil changed at your MINI dealer's service center or at another service center that has trained personnel that can perform the work in accordance with MINI specifications.
16. At page 197, under the heading: “Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US Models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian Models,” the second paragraph should be disregarded and the following text read in lieu thereof:
- The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you have maintenance and repair performed by your MINI dealer's service center or another service center or repair shop that employs trained personnel that can perform maintenance and repair work on your vehicle in accordance with MINI specifications. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you maintain records of all maintenance and repair work performed on your vehicle.
17. At page 209, under the “Battery replacement” section, the text should be disregarded and in lieu thereof the following text should be read:
- Use of recommended vehicle batteries
- The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you use vehicle batteries that it has tested and recommends for use in your vehicle; otherwise the vehicle could be damaged and systems or functions may not be fully available.

After a battery replacement, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you have the battery registered on your vehicle by a service center to ensure that all comfort functions are fully available, and that any “check control” messages of these comfort functions are no longer displayed.



# CONTENTS

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page [238](#).

[6](#) Notes

## AT A GLANCE

[14](#) Cockpit

[18](#) Radio

## CONTROLS

[22](#) Opening and closing

[35](#) Adjusting

[43](#) Transporting children safely

[47](#) Driving

[59](#) Displays

[73](#) Lights

[78](#) Safety

[94](#) Driving stability control systems

[98](#) Driving comfort

[112](#) Climate control

[119](#) Interior equipment

[121](#) Digital compass

[127](#) Storage compartments

## DRIVING TIPS

[134](#) Things to remember when driving

[137](#) Loading

[141](#) Saving fuel

## ENTERTAINMENT

[148](#) Tone

[149](#) Radio

[154](#) Multimedia

## COMMUNICATION

[162](#) Bluetooth hands-free system

## MOBILITY

[172](#) Refueling

[174](#) Fuel

[176](#) Wheels and tires

[190](#) Engine compartment

[192](#) Engine oil

[195](#) Coolant

[197](#) Maintenance

[199](#) Replacing components

[211](#) Breakdown assistance

[216](#) Care

## REFERENCE

[222](#) Technical data

[227](#) Appendix

[231](#) License Texts and Certifications

[238](#) Everything from A to Z

# NOTES

## USING THIS OWNER'S MANUAL

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

### Updates made after the editorial deadline


Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for Vehicle.

### Additional sources of information

Should you have any questions, your service center will be glad to advise you at any time.


Information about MINI, e.g., on technology, is available on the Internet: [www.miniusa.com](http://www.miniusa.com)

## SYMBOLS


 Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

"..." Identifies radio display texts used to select individual functions.

 Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

### Symbols on vehicle components

 Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, in this Owner's Manual, we also describe and illustrate features that are not available in your vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Handbook, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Handbooks.

On right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently from what is shown in the illustrations.

## STATUS OF THE OWNER'S MANUAL

### Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

## Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for Vehicle.

## OWN SAFETY

### Manufacturer

The manufacturer of this MINI is Bayerische Motoren Werke Aktionengesellschaft, BMW AG.

### Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery – homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and permit requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you cannot lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information can be obtained from your Service Centre.

### Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work. Therefore, have this work performed only by a MINI service center or a workshop that works according to the manufacturer's repair procedures for the MINI with respectively trained personnel.

If work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.

### Parts and Accessories

For your own safety, it is recommended that you use genuine parts and accessories approved by MINI. When you purchase accesso-

ries tested and approved by MINI and Genuine MINI Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by MINI to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle. MINI warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship. MINI will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by MINI. MINI cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a MINI safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation, or its occupants. Genuine MINI Parts, MINI Accessories and other products approved by MINI, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all MINI centers. Installation and operation of non-MINI approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the MINI Limited Warranty. See your MINI center for additional information. Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.

### California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit

chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

## Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

## Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- ▷ MINI Maintenance system
- ▷ Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
- ▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the MINI New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## DATA MEMORY

Many electronic components on your vehicle are equipped with data memories that temporarily or permanently store technical information about the condition of the vehicle, events and faults. This technical information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system or the environment:

- ▷ Operating mode of system components, fill levels for instance.
- ▷ Status messages for the vehicle and from its individual components, e.g., wheel rotation speed/vehicle speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults in important system components, e.g., lights and brakes.
- ▷ Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engaging the stability control system.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, such as temperature.

This data is purely technical in nature and is used to detect and correct faults and to optimize vehicle functions. Motion profiles over routes traveled cannot be created from this data. When service offerings are used, e.g., repair services, service processes, warranty claims, quality assurance, this technical information can be read out from the event and fault memories by the service personnel, in-



cluding the manufacturer, using special diagnostic tools. You can obtain further information there if you need it. After an error is corrected, the information in the fault memory is deleted or overwritten on a continuous basis.

With the vehicle in use there are situations where you can associate these technical data with individuals if combined with other information, e.g., an accident report, damage to the vehicle, eye witness accounts — possibly with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions that are contractually agreed with the customer - such as vehicle emergency locating - you can transmit certain vehicle data from the vehicle.

## EVENT DATA RECORDER EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- ▶ How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- ▶ Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- ▶ How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- ▶ How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

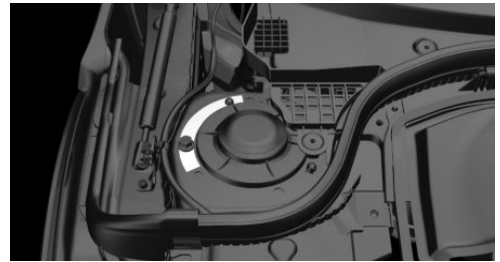
EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving condi-

tions and no personal data, e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment.

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

### For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying MINI of North

America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or MINI of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>

### **For Canadian customers**

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>.





**WATCH ME.**

**AT A GLANCE**

**CONTROLS**

**DRIVING TIPS**

**ENTERTAINMENT**

**COMMUNICATION**

**MOBILITY**

**REFERENCE**

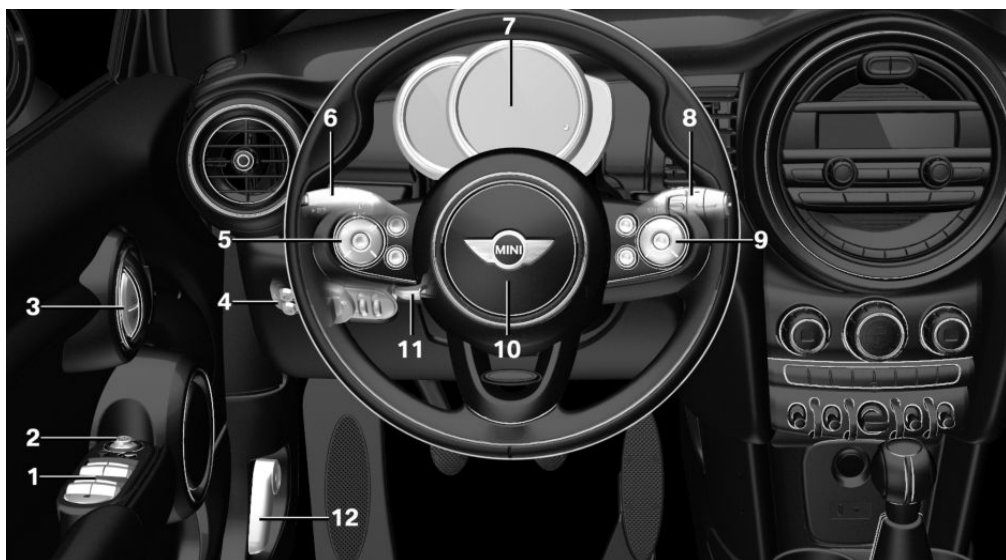
# COCKPIT

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## ALL AROUND THE STEERING WHEEL



1 Power windows 31

2 Exterior mirror operation 40

3 Central locking system 26

4 Lights



Front fog lights 76



Parking lights 73



Low beams 73



Automatic headlight control 74

Daytime running lights 74






















Corner-illuminating lights 75

High-beam Assistant 75

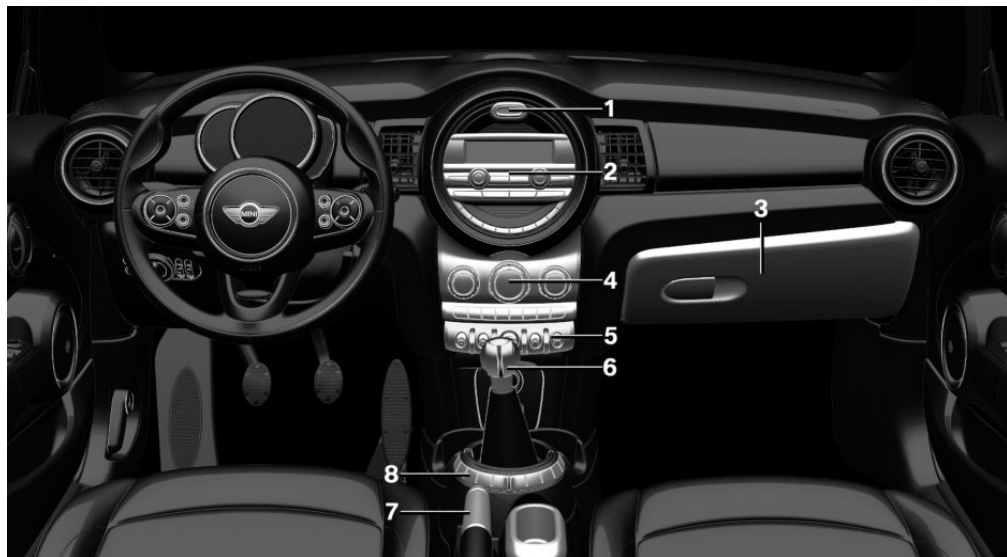








Instrument lighting 76

5 Steering wheel buttons, left

-  Cruise control on/off, interrupt [98](#)
-  Cruise control on/off, interrupt [104](#)
-  Store speed [98](#), [104](#)
-  Resume speed [100](#), [105](#)
-  Set speed [100](#), [104](#)
-  Reduce distance [104](#)
-  Increase distance [98](#)
- 6** Steering column stalk, left
-  Turn signal [52](#)
-  High beams, headlight flasher [52](#)
-  High-beam Assistant [75](#)
-  Roadside parking lights [73](#)
-  Computer [67](#)
- 7** Instrument cluster [59](#)
- 8** Steering column stalk, right
-  Windshield wipers [52](#)
-  Rain sensor [53](#)
-  Cleaning windows [54](#)
-  Rear window wiper [54](#)
-  Cleaning rear window [54](#)
- 9** Steering wheel buttons, right
-  Telephone [162](#)
-  Confirm the selection [67](#)
-  Selection back [67](#)
-  Selection next [67](#)
-  Increase volume
-  Reduce volume
- 10** Horn
- 11** Adjust the steering wheel [42](#)
- 12** Unlock hood [190](#)

## ALL AROUND THE CENTER CONSOLE









- |   |  |  |   |  |
|---|--|--|---|--|
| 1 |    | Hazard warning system <a href="#">211</a>        |  | Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off <a href="#">50</a>  |
|   |    | Intelligent Safety <a href="#">86</a>            |  | Auto Start/Stop function <a href="#">49</a>  |
| 2 |  | Radio <a href="#">149</a>                        | 6   | Steptronic transmission selector lever <a href="#">55</a><br>Manual transmission selector lever <a href="#">55</a> |
| 3 |  | Glove compartment <a href="#">127</a>            | 7   | Parking brake <a href="#">51</a>   |
| 4 |  | Climate control <a href="#">112</a>              | 8   | Driving Dynamics Control <a href="#">96</a>  |
| 5 |  | PDC Park Distance Control <a href="#">106</a>    |   |  |
|   |  | DSC Dynamic Stability Control <a href="#">94</a> |   |  |



## ALL AROUND THE ROOFLINER



- |   |  |  |   |  |                                    |
|---|--|--|---|--|------------------------------------|
| 1 |   | Emergency Request  | 4 |   | Ambient light <a href="#">77</a>   |
| 2 |   | Indicator lamp, front-seat passenger airbag <a href="#">80</a> | 5 |   | Glass sunroof <a href="#">32</a>   |
| 3 |  | Reading lights <a href="#">77</a>                              | 6 |  | Interior lights <a href="#">76</a> |

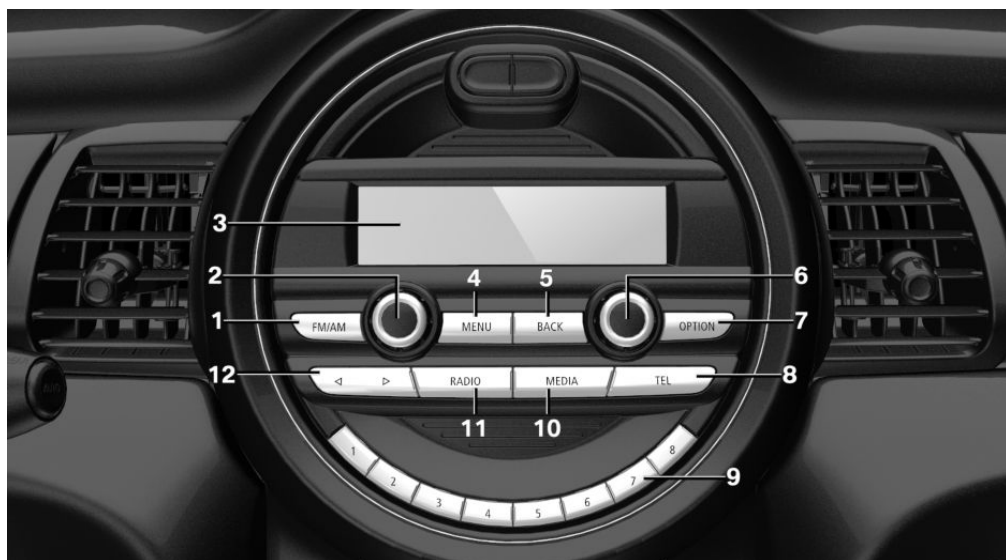
# RADIO

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## OVERVIEW



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1</b> Change waveband</li> <li><b>2</b> Volume, on/off</li> <li><b>3</b> Display</li> <li><b>4</b> Opening the main menu</li> <li><b>5</b> Menu level back</li> <li><b>6</b> Selecting menu items           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Turn: highlight the menu item in the display or adjust the value.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▷ Press: select the highlighted menu item or store the setting.</li> <li><b>7</b> Open the options for the respective menu.</li> <li><b>8</b> "Telephone": open the menu.</li> <li><b>9</b> Programmable memory buttons</li> <li><b>10</b> "Media": open the menu.</li> <li><b>11</b> "Radio": open the menu.</li> <li><b>12</b> Change the station or track.</li> </ul> |
|---|---|

## Functions

Audio functions and vehicle functions can be operated, adjusted and displayed on the radio.


- ▷ Radio.
- ▷ Multimedia.
- ▷ Telephone.
- ▷ Vehicle settings.
- ▷ Check Control messages.

## Menu navigation

All functions of the radio can be called up via the main menu. Some menus can also be called up directly via the buttons on the radio.

### Selecting menu items

Menu items can be selected if they are highlighted.



1.  Press button.
2. Turn the right-hand knob until the desired menu item is highlighted, e.g., "Radio".
3. Press the right-hand knob again to confirm the highlighted menu item.




### Representation in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "Radio".



## Symbols in the status field

### Audio source



Symbol	Meaning
FM, AM	Radio waveband.
	HD Radio station is being received.
SAT	Satellite radio is switched on.
<b>SAT</b>	Satellite radio not available.
	Playback via Aux In.

Symbol	Meaning
	Playback via USB audio interface.
	Microphone muted
	Tone output muted

## Telephone

Symbol	Meaning
	Missed call
	Wireless network reception strength

## Traffic bulletins



Symbol	Meaning
TP	Traffic bulletins switched on
	Traffic bulletins switched on, no traffic bulletin stations available.
	Traffic Jump

## Changing settings

To set number values or values on a scale:

1. Select the desired menu item.
2. Turn the right-hand knob to set the value.
3. Press the right-hand knob to store the value.

## Example: setting the clock

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Time/Date"
4. "Time:"
5. Turn the right-hand knob until the desired hour is set.
6. Press the right-hand knob to store setting.
7. Turn the right-hand knob to set the minutes and press the right-hand knob to save the setting.



**HANDLE ME.**

**AT A GLANCE**

**CONTROLS**

**DRIVING TIPS**

**ENTERTAINMENT**

**COMMUNICATION**

**MOBILITY**

**REFERENCE**

# OPENING AND CLOSING

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## REMOTE CONTROL/KEY

### General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with integrated key.

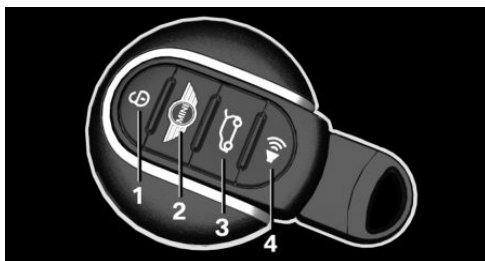
Every remote control holds a replaceable battery.

You may set the key functions depending on the optional features and country-specific version. For Settings, refer to page 29.

The vehicle stores personal settings for every remote control. Personal Profile, refer to page 23.

The remote controls hold information on required maintenance. For service data, refer to page 197.

### Overview



- 1 Unlocking
- 2 Locking
- 3 Unlock the tailgate
- 4 Panic mode

### Integrated key



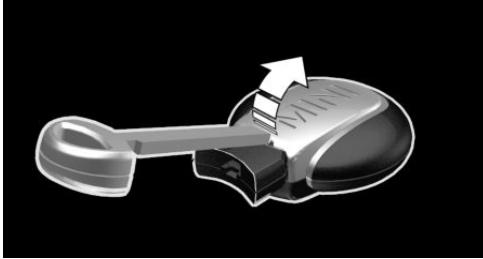
Press button, arrow 1, and remove the key, arrow 2.

The integrated key fits the driver's door lock.

### Replacing the battery

1. Remove integrated key from remote control.
2. Slide the key into the opening and raise the cover, arrow.

The battery compartment is accessible.



3. Slide the key in the cover of the battery compartment and raise the cover, arrow.



4. Insert a battery of the same type with the positive side facing up.
5. Insert lid and cover.



Take the used battery to a recycling center or to your service center.

### New remote controls

New remote controls are available from the service center.

### Loss of the remote controls

Lost remote controls can be disabled by your service center.

### Emergency detection of remote control

It is possible to switch on the ignition or start the engine in situations such as the following:

- ▷ Interference of radio transmission to remote control by external sources e.g., by radio masts.
- ▷ Empty battery in remote control.

- ▷ Interference from radio transmissions through mobile devices in close proximity to remote control.
- ▷ Interference of radio transmission by charger while charging items such as mobile devices in the vehicle.

A Check Control message is displayed if an attempt is made to switch on the ignition or start the engine.

### Starting the engine via emergency detection of the remote control



Steptronic transmission: if a corresponding Check Control message appears, hold the remote control, as shown, against the marked area on the steering column and press the Start/Stop button within 10 seconds while pressing the brake.

Manual transmission: if a corresponding Check Control message appears, hold the remote control, as shown, against the marked area on the steering column and press the Start/Stop button within 10 seconds while pressing the clutch.

## PERSONAL PROFILE

### The concept

Personal Profile provides three profiles, using which personal vehicle settings can be stored. Every remote control has one of these profiles assigned.

If the vehicle is unlocked using a remote control, the assigned personal profile will be activated. All settings stored in the profile are automatically applied.

If several drivers use their own remote control, the vehicle will adjust the personal settings during unlocking. These settings are also restored, if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by a person with a different remote control.

Changes to the settings are automatically saved in the personal profile.


## Adjusting

The settings for the following systems and functions are saved in the active profile. The scope of storable settings is country- and equipment-dependable.


- ▷ Unlocking and locking.
- ▷ Lights.
- ▷ Radio.
- ▷ Instrument cluster.
- ▷ Climate control.
- ▷ Park Distance Control PDC.
- ▷ Driving Dynamics Control.
- ▷ Cruise control.
- ▷ Intelligent Safety.

## USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

### Note

 Take the remote control with you. People or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside. ◀

## Unlocking


 Press button on the remote control.

- ▷ The vehicle is unlocked.
- ▷ Interior lamps and courtesy lamps are activated. This function is not available, if the interior lamps were switched off manually.
- ▷ The welcome lamps are switched on, if this function was activated.
- ▷ Exterior mirrors folded through convenient closing are folded open.

You can set how the vehicle is to be unlocked. Create the settings, refer to page 29.


The alarm system, refer to page 30, is disarmed.

## Convenient opening


 Press and hold this button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

## Locking

 Locking from the outside  
Do not lock the vehicle from the outside with people inside the car, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge. ◀

The driver's door must be closed.

 Press button on the remote control.

The alarm system, refer to page 30, is armed. If the vehicle horn honks twice when you lock the car, this means that the engine or ignition is still switched on. In this case, the engine or ignition must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.



## Switching on interior lights and courtesy lights



Press button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

This function is not available, if the interior lamps were switched off manually.

If the button is pressed within 10 seconds of when the vehicle was locked Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the anti-theft warning system, refer to page 31, are turned off. After locking, wait 10 seconds before pressing the button again.

## Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.



Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

## Unlock the tailgate



Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The tailgate opens slightly, regardless of whether the vehicle was previously locked or unlocked.

Depending on the features and the country version, it is also possible to have door unlocked. Create the settings, refer to page 29.

If the doors were not unlocked, the tailgate is locked again as soon as it closes.



Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed. ◀



Provide edge protection

Sharp objects or those with edges can hit the rear window while driving and damage the heat conductors of the rear window. Provide edge protection. ◀

## Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle can among others be malfunctioning under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 22.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmit power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.

Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the integrated key, refer to page 26.

## For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- ▷ LX8766S.
- ▷ LX8766E.
- ▷ LX8CAS.
- ▷ LX8CAS2.
- ▷ MYTCAS4.

Compliance statement:


This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- ▷ This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- ▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.


Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

## WITHOUT REMOTE CONTROL

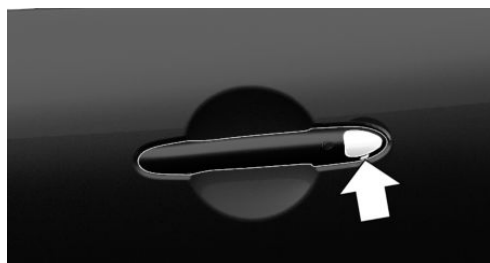
### From the outside

 Locking from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside with people inside the car, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge. ◀

 Remove the key before pulling the door handle

Before pulling the outside door handle, remove the key to avoid damaging the paintwork and the key. ◀



Unlock or lock the driver's door via the door lock using the integrated key, refer to page 22. The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

To do this, unlock the lid from below with the integrated key, arrow, and remove.

### Alarm system


The alarm system is not armed if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.


The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle was unlocked via the door lock. In order to terminate this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed, through emergency detection of the remote control.

### From the inside

#### Locking and unlocking



 Press button.  
Vehicle is locked.

 Press button.  
The vehicle is unlocked.

Pressing the buttons for the central locking system locks and unlocks the doors and the tailgate when the front doors are closed, but they are not secured against theft.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.


In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.


### Unlocking and opening

Either unlock the doors together using the central locking system buttons and then pull the door handle above the armrest or pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.


## TAILGATE

### Hints

 Keep the closing path clear  
Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀

 Do not place the remote control in the cargo area


Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed. ◀

 Provide edge protection  
Sharp objects or those with edges can hit the rear window while driving and damage the heat conductors of the rear window. Provide edge protection. ◀

### Opening

When the tailgate is opened, make sure there is sufficient clearance to prevent damage.



- ▷ Unlock the vehicle and press the button on the tailgate.
- ▷  Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

As the case may be, the doors are also unlocked. Unlocking with the remote control, refer to page 25.

The tailgate is unlocked and can be swung upward.

### Opening from the inside



With the vehicle is stationary, press the button in the driver's footwell.

### Closing



Recessed grips on the inside trim of the tailgate can be used to conveniently pull down the tailgate.

## COMFORT ACCESS

### The concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

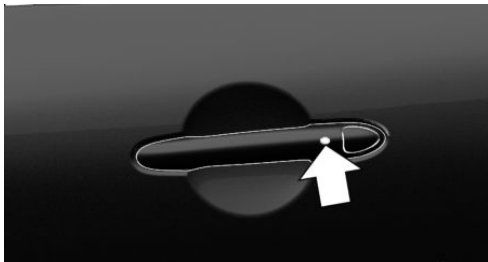
- ▷ Unlocking/locking of the vehicle.
- ▷ Convenient closing.
- ▷ Separate unlocking of the tailgate.
- ▷ Start the engine.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ There are no sources of interference nearby.
- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle.

- ▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- ▷ The engine can only be started if the remote control is in the vehicle.

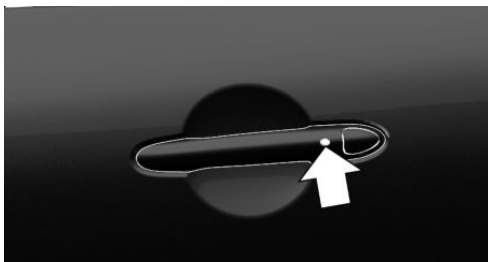
## Unlocking




On the driver's or front passenger's door handle, press the button, arrow.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: 

## Locking



On the driver's or front passenger's door handle, press the button, arrow.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: 

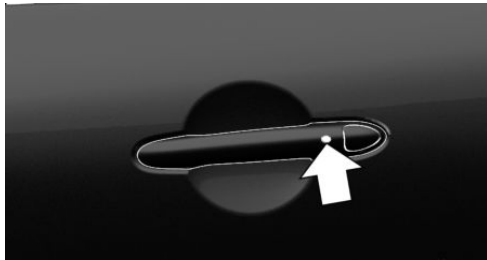
To save battery power, ensure that all power consumers are turned off, before locking the vehicle.

## Convenient closing



Monitor closing

Monitor closing to ensure that no one becomes trapped. ◀




Press and hold down the handle of the driver or the front seat passenger.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: 

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof will be closed.

## Unlock the tailgate

Press button on tailgate's exterior.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: 

The situation of the doors does not change.



Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed. ◀

## Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle can among others be malfunctioning under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 22.

- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmit power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.

Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects or electronic devices.




In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the remote control or using the integrated key, refer to page 26.

## ADJUSTING

### Unlocking




The settings are saved in the active profile. Personal Profile, refer to page 23.

#### Doors

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4.  Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired function.
  - ▷ "All doors"  
The entire vehicle is unlocked.
  - ▷ "Driver's door"  
Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.



### Tailgate

Depending on optional features and country version, this setting is not offered in some cases.



1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4.  Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired function.
  - ▷ "Tailgate"  
Only the tailgate is unlocked.
  - ▷ "Tailgate + door(s)"  
The tailgate and the doors are unlocked.

### Locking

The settings are saved in the active profile. Personal Profile, refer to page 23.

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. Select desired setting.
  - ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"  
The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened.
  - ▷ "Lock after starting to drive"  
The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

### Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. Select desired setting.
  - ▷ "Flash for lock/unlock"

Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.

▷ "Acoustic warning"

Unlocking is signaled by one honk of the horn.

## ALARM SYSTEM

### The concept

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system responds to:

- ▷ Opening a door, the hood or the tailgate.
- ▷ Movements in the vehicle interior
- ▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, e. g., during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the car.
- ▷ Disconnected battery voltage.

The alarm system briefly signals tampering:

- ▷ Acoustic alarm.
- ▷ By switching on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ By flashing the daytime running lights.

### Arming and disarming the alarm system

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or via the Comfort Access, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

### Door lock and armed alarm system

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, when the vehicle is unlocked via the door lock.

Switch off the alarm, refer to page 31.

### Tailgate and armed alarm system

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is armed.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again when the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

### Panic mode

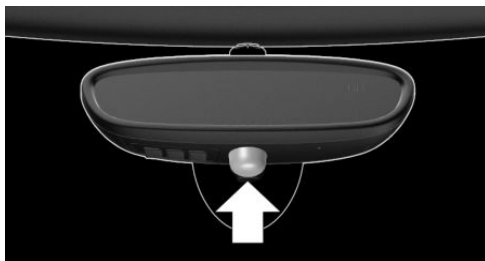
You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.



Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To reel off the alarm: press any button.

### Indicator lamp on the interior rearview mirror



- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes briefly every 2 seconds:  
The system is armed.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after locking:  
The doors, hood or tailgate is not closed properly, but the rest of the vehicle is secured.  
After 10 seconds, the indicator lamp flashes continuously. Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active.  
When the still open access is closed, interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- ▷ The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking:  
The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the engine ignition is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:  
An alarm has been triggered.

### Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the car is towed.

### Interior motion sensor

The windows and glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

### Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be switched off together, such as in the following situations:

- ▷ In automatic car washes.
- ▷ In duplex garages.
- ▷ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▷ With animals in the vehicle.

### Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor



Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are turned off, until the vehicle is locked again.

### Switching off the alarm

- ▷ Unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed through emergency detection of remote control, refer to page 23.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: If you are carrying the remote control on your person, grasp the driver side or front passenger side door handle completely.

Unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed through emergency detection of remote control, refer to page 23.

## POWER WINDOWS

### Note



Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, e.g., cannot operate the power windows and injure themselves. ◀



### On 5-door models



### On 3-door models





### Opening

- ▷  Press the button to the resistance point.  
The window opens while the switch is held.
- ▷  Press the switch beyond the resistance point.  
The window opens automatically. Pressing again stops the motion.

See also: Convenient opening, refer to page 24, via remote control.


## Closing

 Keep the closing path clear  
Monitor closing and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀


 Pull switch up.  
The window closes while the reel is held.

See also: closing by means of Comfort Access, refer to page 28.

## Pinch protection system

 Danger of jamming even with pinch protection


Even with the pinch protection system, check that the window's closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not stop in certain situations, e.g., if thin objects are present. ◀

 No window accessories  
Do not install any accessories in the window's range of movement; otherwise, the pinch protection system will be impaired. ◀

If closing force exceeds a specific margin as a window closes, closing is interrupted.

The window reopens slightly.

## Closing without the pinch protection system

 Keep the closing path clear  
Monitor closing and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀

E. g. danger from the outside or ice might prevent window from closing properly - proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

The pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain margin.


2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.


The window closes without jam protection.

## On 5-door models: safety switch

The safety switch in the driver's door can be used to prevent children, e.g., from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.


## Switching on and off


 Press button.  
The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

 Safety switch for rear operation  
Press the safety switch when transporting children in the rear; otherwise, injury may result if the windows are closed without supervision. ◀

## PANORAMIC GLASS SUNROOF

### Hints

 Keep the closing path clear  
Monitor closing and make sure that the closing path of the glass sunroof is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀

 Take the remote control with you  
Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, e.g., cannot operate the glass sunroof and injure themselves. ◀



## At a glance



### Tilting the glass sunroof



Press back the reel up to or beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is raised.

### Opening glass sunroof

#### When the glass sunroof is closed



Press the reel back beyond the resistance point and release it twice.

The glass sunroof is opened.

Pressing the reel again stops the motion.

#### With the glass sunroof completely raised



- ▷ Slide reel back to the resistance point and hold.  
The glass sunroof is opened as long as the reel is pressed.
- ▷ Press the reel back beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is opened.  
Pressing the reel again stops the motion.

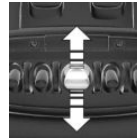
### Comfort position

If the glass sunroof stops before it is completely opened, it is in the Comfort position. In this position the wind noises in the interior are the least.

If desired, continue the movement by pressing the reel.

### Closing glass sunroof

#### With the glass sunroof open



- ▷ Slide reel forward to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof is closed as long as the reel is pressed and stops in the raised position.

- ▷ Press the reel forward beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is closed and stops in the raised position.

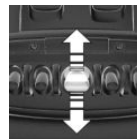
Pressing the reel toward the back stops the motion.

- ▷ Press the reel forward beyond the resistance point and release it twice.

The glass sunroof is closed.

Pressing the reel again stops the motion.

#### With the glass sunroof completely raised



- ▷ Press the reel forward beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is closed.

### Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a glass sunroof closes, the closing action is interrupted.

The glass sunroof reopens slightly.



Danger of jamming even with pinch protection

Despite the pinch protection system, check that the glass sunroof's closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not be interrupted in certain extreme situations, such as when thin objects are present. ◀

### Closing without the pinch protection system

E. g. if there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Press the reel forward beyond the resistance point and hold it.  
The pinch protection is limited and the glass sunroof reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain margin.
2. Press the reel forward again beyond the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

### Initializing after a power failure

After a power failure, it can happen that the glass sunroof can only be raised. The system must be initialized in this case. MINI recommends having this work performed by your service center.

# ADJUSTING

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## SITTING SAFELY


The ideal seating position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.


The seating position plays an important role in an accident in combination with:

- ▶ Safety belts, refer to page 37.
- ▶ Head restraints, refer to page 38.
- ▶ Airbags, refer to page 78.

## SEATS


### Hints

 Do not adjust the seat while driving  
Do not adjust the driver's seat while driving, or the seat could respond with unexpected movement and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident. ◀

 Do not incline the backrest too far to the rear

Do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while driving, or there is a risk of slipping under the safety belt in the event of an accident. This

would eliminate the protection normally provided by the belt. ◀

 Keep the movement area unobstructed  
When changing the seat position, keep the seat's area of movement unobstructed; otherwise, people might get injured or objects damaged. ◀

## Adjusting seats

### Overview



- 1 Forward/backward
- 2 Thigh support
- 3 Height
- 4 Backrest tilt

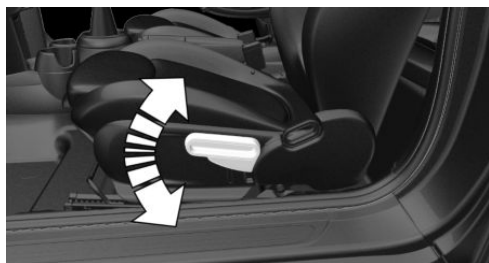
### Forward/backward



Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly making sure it engages properly.

### Height



Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed to reach the desired height.

### Backrest tilt



Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

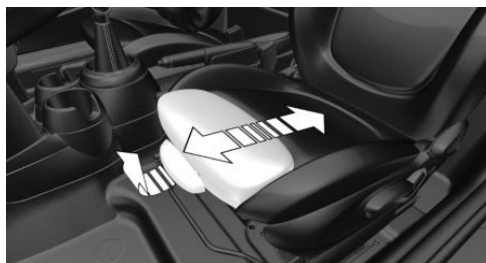
### Lumbar support

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.



Turn the wheel in order to increase or decrease the curvature.

### Thigh support



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

### In 3-door models: entering the rear

#### Hints



Folding back and locking the backrest  
Before driving off, fold back and lock the backrests; otherwise, an unexpected seat movement may cause an accident. ◀



Keep the movement area unobstructed  
When changing the seat position, keep the seat's area of movement unobstructed; otherwise, people might get injured or objects damaged. ◀

## Fold down seat back

1. Pull lever up to the stop.



2. Fold backrest forward.
3. Push the seat forward.

## Original position

The driver's seat features a mechanical memory function for forward/back and backrest adjustment.

1. Push the seat back into the original position.
2. Fold back the backrest to lock the seat.

If the backrest is folded back when the seat is not yet in the original position, the seat latches in the current position. In this case, manually adjust longitudinal direction, refer to page 35.

## Front seat heating



## Switching on



Press button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the journey is continued within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

When Green mode, refer to page 142, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

## Switch off



Press button longer.

The LEDs go out.

## SAFETY BELTS

### Seats with safety belt

The vehicle has four or five seating positions, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

### Number of safety belts

Your vehicle has been fitted with four or five safety belts for your and your passengers' safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

### General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving off.

For the occupants' safety the belt locking mechanism triggers early. Slowly guide the belt out of the holder when applying it.


If needed, disengage the belt in the rear from the belt buckle on the side.


Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

The two outer safety belt buckles, integrated into the rear seat, are for passengers sitting on the left and right.


The center rear safety belt buckle is solely intended for the center passenger.


## Hints

 One person per safety belt  
Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride on a passenger's lap. ◀

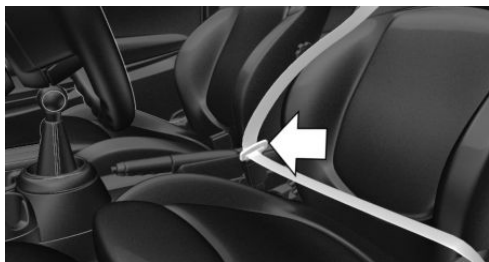
 Putting on the belt  
Lay the belt, without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. Otherwise, the belt can slip over the hips in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen.

The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub on sharp edges, be routed over breakable objects, or be pinched. ◀

 What reduces the restraining effect  
Avoid wearing bulky clothing, and pull the shoulder belt periodically to readjust the tension. Make sure that the belt is not jammed; otherwise, the belt can be damaged and the restraining effect is reduced. ◀

 Using the middle safety belt  
If the middle safety belt in the rear is used, the larger side of the backrest must be locked. Otherwise, the safety belt will not have a restraining effect. ◀

## Buckling the belt



Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

## Unbuckling the belt

1. Hold the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

## Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat



The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder is active at speeds above approx. 6 mph/10 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

## Damage to safety belts

Wear and tear after accidents or when damaged otherwise:

Have the safety belts, including the safety belt tensioners, replaced and have the belt anchors checked.



Check and replace safety belts  
This should only be done by your service center; otherwise, this safety feature might not work properly. ◀

## FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

### Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Adjust the headrest via the backrest tilt as needed.



Adjusting the head restraint  
Adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats properly; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident. ◀

## Height

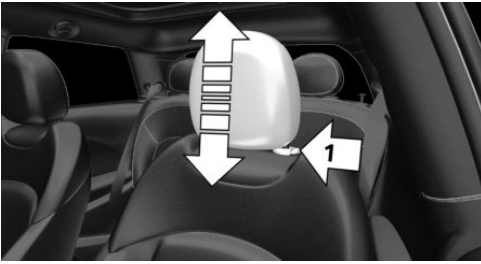
Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

## Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the tilt of the backrest.

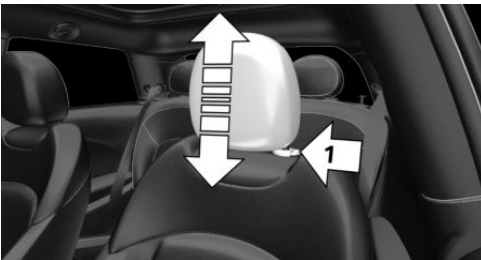
## Adjusting the height



- ▷ To raise: pull.
- ▷ To lower: press button, arrow 1, and push headrest down.

## Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Pull head restraint up as far as possible.
2. Press button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

To remove the headrest, fold the backrest rearward if it is in the upright position.



Before transporting passengers

Reinstall the head restraint before transporting anyone in the seat; otherwise, the protective function of the head restraint is unavailable. ◀

## REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

### Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.



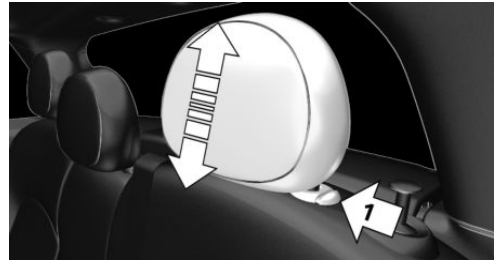
Adjusting the head restraint

Adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats properly; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident. ◀

## Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

## Adjusting the height



- ▷ To raise: push.
- ▷ To lower: press button, arrow 1, and push headrest down.

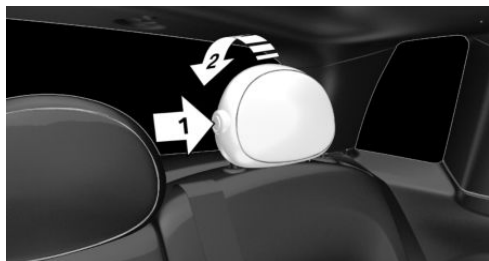
## Folding down head restraints



Extending/retracting head restraint

Only fold down head restraint if no passengers are in the rear. Fold out retracted headrests again if passengers are being carried

in the rear; otherwise, there is increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. ◀

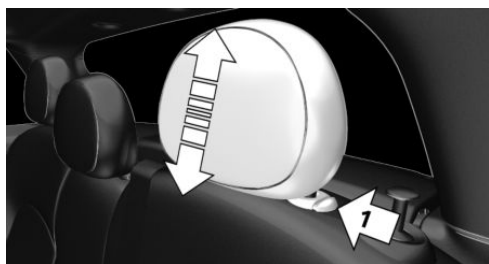


- ▷ To lower flaps: press the button, arrow 1, and press down the head restraint.
- ▷ Fold back up: pull up head restraints.

## Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

Fold the seat down, refer to page 125, before removing the head restraint, otherwise the head restraint cannot be removed.



1. Pull head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.



**Before transporting passengers**

Reinstall the head restraint before transporting anyone in the seat; otherwise, the protective function of the head restraint is unavailable. ◀

## MIRRORS

### Exterior mirrors

#### General information

The mirror on the passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the mirror setting is stored for the profile currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if this function is active.

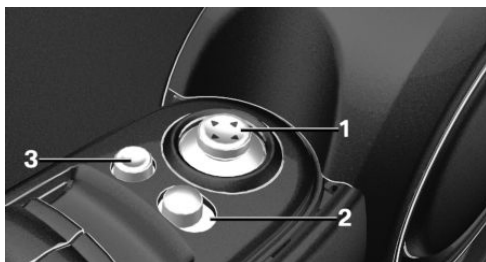
#### Note



Estimating distances correctly

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to the traffic behind you based on what you see in the mirror, as this will increase your risk of an accident. ◀

#### Overview



- 1 Adjusting 41
- 2 Left/right, Automatic Curb Monitor
- 3 Fold in and out 41

#### Selecting a mirror



To change over to the other mirror:  
Slide the switch.



## Adjusting electrically



The setting corresponds to the direction in which the button is pressed.

## Adjusting manually

In case of electrical malfunction press edges of mirror.

## Automatic Curb Monitor

### The concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, e.g.

### Activating



1. Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

### Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger side mirror position.

## Fold in and out



Press button.

Possible at speeds up to approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

E. g. this is advantageous

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ In narrow streets.
- ▷ For folding mirrors back out that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.



Fold in the mirror in a car wash

Before washing the car in an automatic car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors by hand or with the button; otherwise, the mirrors could be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle. ◀

## Automatic heating

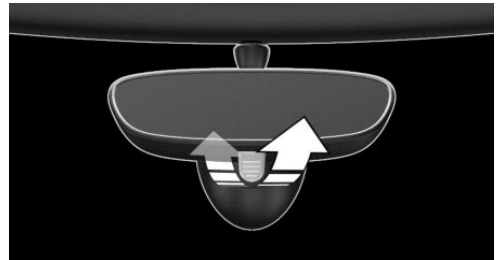
Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

## Automatic dimming feature

Both exterior mirrors are automatically dimmed. Photocells are used to control the Interior rearview mirror, refer to page 42.

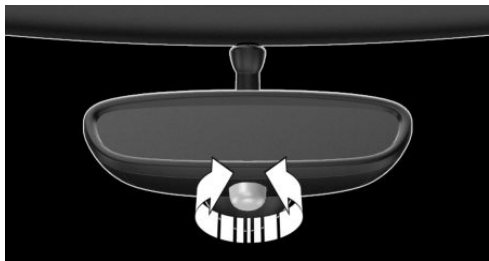
## Interior rearview mirror, manually dimmable

### Flip lever



To reduce the blinding effect of the interior rearview mirror, flip the lever forward.

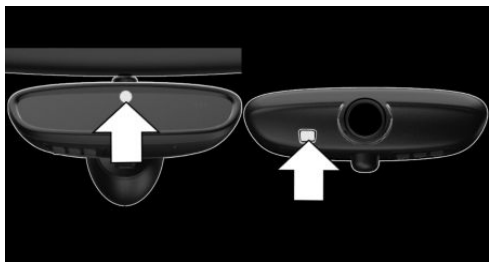
## Turn knob



Turn the knob to reduce the blinding effect by the interior mirror.

## Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature

### The concept



Photocells are used for control:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

### Functional requirement

For proper operation:

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

## STEERING WHEEL

### Note



Do not adjust while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving; otherwise, an unexpected movement could result in an accident. ◀

### Adjusting



1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Fold the lever down.
3. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
4. Fold the lever back.
5. Switch off the ignition again if needed.

# TRANSPORTING CHILDREN SAFELY

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## THE RIGHT PLACE FOR CHILDREN

### Note



Children in the vehicle

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle; otherwise, they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g., by opening the doors. ◀

### Children should always be in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the back seat.



Transporting children in the rear

Only transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm in the rear in child restraint systems provided in accordance with the age, weight and size of the child; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight and size. ◀

### Children on the front passenger seat

Should it ever be necessary to use a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 80.

### Note



Deactivating the front-seat passenger airbags

If a child restraint system is used in the front passenger seat, deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are activated, even with a child restraint system. ◀

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

### Hints



Manufacturer's information for child restraint systems

To select, mount and use child restraint systems, observe the information provided by the system manufacturer; otherwise, the protective effect can be lost. ◀



Ensuring the stability of the child seat

When installing child restraint systems, make sure that the child seat is securely fastened to the backrest of the seat. Angle and headrest of the backrest might need to be adjusted or possibly be removed. Make sure that all backrests are securely locked. Otherwise the stability of the child seat can be affected, and

there is an increased risk of injury because of unexpected movement of the seat backrest. ◀

In order to facilitate the installation of a back-facing child restraint system in the rear:


move the front passenger's seat as far up as possible before folding down the backrest.

### On the front passenger seat

#### Deactivating airbags

After installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 80.

 Deactivating the front-seat passenger airbags

If a child restraint system is used in the front passenger seat, deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are activated, even with a child restraint system. ◀

#### Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the highest and thus best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchorage of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat,

move the passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

### Child seat security



The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

#### Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
3. Allow the strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

#### Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the strap to be pulled in completely.

## LATCH CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

### Note

 Follow manufacturer's information for LATCH child restraint systems


To mount and use the LATCH child restraint systems, observe the operating and safety infor-

mation from the system manufacturer; otherwise, the level of protection may be reduced. ◀

#### Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child

and CRS weight of 65 lb when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

 Properly engage the lower LATCH anchors

Make sure that the lower LATCH anchors have properly engaged and that the child restraint system is resting snugly against the backrest; otherwise, the degree of protection may be reduced. ◀

Before mounting the LATCH child restraint system, pull the belt away from the child restraint system.

### Position



The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors.




Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, 2, of LATCH symbols. It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.

### Assembly of LATCH child restraint systems

1. Mount the child restraint system; refer to the user's manual of the system.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

### Child restraint fixing system with a tether strap

#### Note

 Mounting eyelets  
Use the mounting eyes only for the upper retaining strap to secure child restraint systems; otherwise, the mounting eyes could be damaged. ◀

### Mounting points

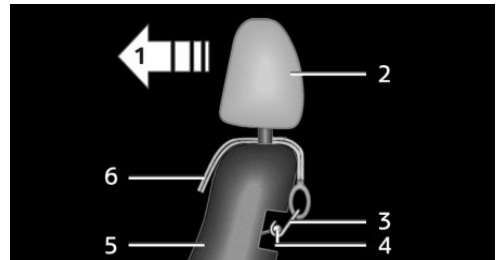


The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper Top Tether are marked with this symbol. It can be found on the rear seat backrest or the rear window shelf.

### Retaining strap guide




**Retaining strap**  
Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not passed over the head restraints or sharp edges and is not twisted up to the upper mounting points; otherwise, the belt cannot properly secure the child restraint system in an accident. ◀




- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for upper retaining strap
- 4 Mounting point/eye
- 5 Seat backrest
- 6 Upper retaining strap

### Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Raise the head restraint if needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.
3. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting eye on the rear seat.
4. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.

 No persons on the back seat when there is a child restraint system with an upper retaining strap on the front passenger seat.

When there is a child restraint system with an upper retaining strap on the front passenger seat, no one should sit in the back seat directly behind it, otherwise there is an increased risk of injury due to the upper retaining strap. ◀

 Upper retaining strap when the backrest is folded down

When the backrest is folded down, do not guide the belt through the head restraint supports on the backrest; otherwise the belt may not secure the child restraint system properly in case of an accident ◀

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear: safety switch, refer to page 32.


## ON 5-DOOR MODELS: LOCKING THE DOORS AND WINDOWS

### Rear doors



Push the locking lever on the rear doors up. The door can now be opened from the outside only.

### Safety switch for the rear

 Press button on the driver's door if children are being transported in the rear.

# DRIVING

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## START/STOP BUTTON

### The concept



Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

Steptronic transmission: the engine starts in selector lever position P or N with the brake pedal pressed when you press the Start/Stop button.

Manual transmission: the engine starts with the clutch pedal pressed when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

### Ignition on

Steptronic transmission: press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button without stepping on the clutch pedal.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

### Ignition off

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission: shift to selector lever position P, press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the brake.

All indicator lights in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Ignition automatically cuts off while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is stopped:

- ▶ During locking, also with the low beams activated.
- ▶ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started. This function is only available when the low beams are turned off.
- ▶ When opening and closing the driver door, if the driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the low beams are turned off.
- ▶ While the driver's safety belt is unbuckled with driver's door open and low beams off.
- ▶ The low beams switch to parking lights after approx. 15 minutes of no use.

### Radio ready state

Activate radio-ready state:

- ▶ When the engine is running: press the Start/Stop button.

Some electronic systems/power consumers remain ready for operation.

Radio ready state switches off automatically:

- ▷ After approx. 8 minutes.
- ▷ When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.

The radio-ready state remains active if, e.g., the ignition is automatically switched off for the following reasons:

- ▷ Opening or closing the driver's door.
- ▷ Unfastening of the driver's safety belt.
- ▷ When automatically switching from low beams to parking lights.

If the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on, the system automatically switches to the radio-ready state if the lights are turned off or, if correspondingly equipped, the day-time running lights are activated.

## STARTING THE ENGINE

### Hints



#### Enclosed areas

Do not let the engine run in enclosed areas, since breathing in exhaust fumes may lead to loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. ◀



#### Unattended vehicle

Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running; doing so poses a risk of danger.

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, set the parking brake and place the transmission in selector lever position P or N to prevent the vehicle from moving. ◀



#### Repeated starting in quick succession

Avoid trying to start the vehicle repeatedly and in quick succession. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned,

posing a risk of overheating and damage to the catalytic converter. ◀

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds.

## Steptronic transmission

### Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Engage selector lever position P or N.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

## Manual transmission

### Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift to neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

## ENGINE STOP

### Hints



Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, e.g., cannot start the engine. ◀



Apply parking brake and further secure the vehicle if needed.

Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll. On steep upward and downward inclines, further secure the ve-



hicle, e.g., by turning the steering wheel in the direction of the curb. ◀

### Before driving into a car wash

So that the vehicle can roll into a car wash observe instructions for going into an automatic car wash, refer to page 216.

### Steptronic transmission

#### Switching off the engine

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.  
The engine is switched off.  
The radio-ready state is switched on.
3. Set the parking brake.

### Manual transmission

#### Switching off the engine

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.  
The engine is switched off.  
The radio-ready state is switched on.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

## AUTO START/STOP FUNCTION

### The concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, e.g., in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts again automatically for driving off.

### Automatic operation

After every start of the engine using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is in the last selected state, refer to page 50. When

the Auto Start/Stop function is active, it is available when the vehicle is traveling faster than about 3 mph, approx. 5 km/h.

### Engine stop

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

Manual transmission:

- ▷ Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
- ▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Steptronic transmission:

- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is stopped.
- ▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

In order to be able to release the brake pedal, engage lever in position P. The engine remains off.

To continue driving depress the brake pedal. When a gear is engaged, the engine starts automatically.

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

### Displays in the instrument cluster



The display indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.



The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

## Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ External temperature too low.
- ▷ The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- ▷ The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- ▷ The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- ▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- ▷ After driving in reverse.
- ▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- ▷ At higher elevations.
- ▷ The engine compartment lid is unlocked.
- ▷ The parking assistant is activated.
- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position R, N or M/S.

## Starting the engine

The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- ▷ Manual transmission:  
The clutch pedal is pressed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission:  
By releasing the brake pedal.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

## Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met.

- ▷ The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- ▷ The hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

## Functional limitations

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ Excessive warming of the car's interior when the cooling function is switched on.
- ▷ The steering wheel is turned.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position D to R, N or M/S.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position P to R, N, D or M/S.
- ▷ The vehicle begins rolling.
- ▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- ▷ Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- ▷ Manual transmission: low brake vacuum pressure; this can occur, e.g., if the brake pedal is depressed a number of times in succession.

## Switching the system on/off

### Using the button



Press button.

- ▶ LED comes on: Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.

The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.

- ▶ LED goes out: Auto Start/Stop function is activated.

### Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, e. g., when leaving it.

1. Steptronic transmission: engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
3. Manual transmission: shift into first gear or reverse.
4. Set the parking brake.

Engine start as usual via Start/Stop button.

### Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons as if the driver were absent.

### Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked.

## PARKING BRAKE

### Applying

The lever automatically engages after being pulled up.

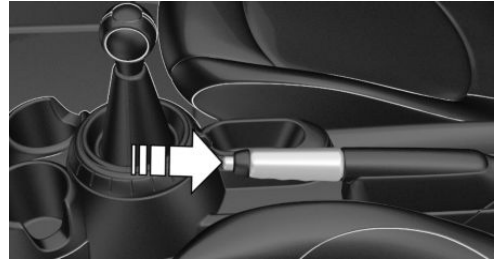


The indicator lamp lights up red. The parking brake is set.



Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

### Releasing



Raise lever slightly, press the button and guide the lever down.

### Hints



Use while driving

On rare occasions if it is necessary to use the parking brake while driving, do not use excessive force when applying it. When using it, keep the button on the lever depressed.

Otherwise, using excessive force when applying the parking brake may cause the rear wheels to lock, resulting in fishtailing. ◀

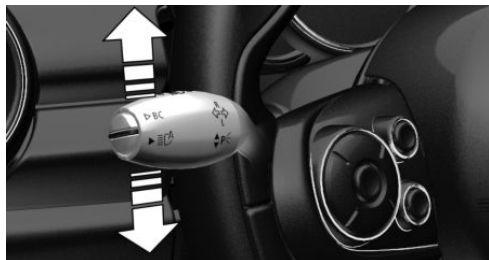
To prevent corrosion and one-sided brake action, lightly apply the parking brake periodically while coasting, if traffic conditions permit.

The brake lights will not light up if the parking brake is set.

## TURN SIGNAL, HIGH BEAMS, HEADLIGHT FLASHER

### Turn signal

#### Using turn signals



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To switch off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.



#### Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever to the resistance point.

The turn signal flashes three times.

The function can be activated or deactivated.

Set via radio.

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Triple turn signal"

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

#### Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

### High beams, headlight flasher



- ▷ High beams, arrow 1.
- ▷ Headlight flasher, arrow 2.

## WASHER/WIPER SYSTEM

### Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

#### Hints



Do not activate wipers if frozen to windshield

Do not switch on the wipers if they are frozen to the windshield; otherwise, the wiper blades and the wiper motor may be damaged. ◀



Do not activate wipers on dry windshield

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly. ◀



Do not activate wipers with wipers folded away

Do not switch on the wipers if they are folded away, otherwise the hood or the wipers may be damaged. ◀

## Switching on



Push wiper lever up.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- ▶ Normal wiper speed: push up once.  
The wipers switch to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▶ Fast wiper speed: press up twice or press once beyond the resistance point.  
Wipers change to normal speed when vehicle comes to standstill.

## Switch off and brief wipe



Push wiper lever down.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- ▶ Single wipe: press down once.
- ▶ To switch off normal wipe: press down once.
- ▶ To switch off fast wipe: press down twice.

## Interval mode or rain sensor

### The concept

Without the rain sensor, the frequency of the wiper operation is preset.

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall. The sensor is located on the windshield, directly behind the interior rearview mirror.

### Activating/deactivating



Press button on the wiper lever.

The LED in the wiper lever lights up and wiping starts. When wipers are frozen to windshield, wiper operation is deactivated.

- ⚠ Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes
- Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash; otherwise, unintentional wiping can cause damages. ◀

### Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor




Turn the thumbwheel.

## Washing the windshield



Pull the wiper lever towards you.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

 Do not use the washer system at freezing temperatures

Do not use the washers if fluid could freeze onto the windshield which might impede your viewing field. Therefore use antifreeze fluid.

Avoid using the washer when the reservoir is empty; operation might damage pump. ◀

## Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while the ignition is switched on.

## Rear window wiper

### Switching on the rear window wiper



Turn the switch from idle position 0 upward, arrow 1: interval mode. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

## Cleaning rear window

In interval mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.


In idle position: turn switch downward, arrow 3. The switch automatically returns to its idle position when released.

## Fold-out position of the wipers

Helpful when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, e.g.

1. Switch the ignition on and off again.
2. With icy conditions make sure that blades are not frozen to the windshield.
3. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wiper remains in a nearly vertical position.


After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

 Folding wipers back down  
Before switching the ignition on, fold the wipers back down to the windshield; otherwise, the wipers may become damaged when they are activated. ◀

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Push wiper lever down. Wipers move to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

## WASHER FLUID

### Hints

 Antifreeze for washer fluid  
Antifreeze is flammable and can cause injury if it is used incorrectly.

Therefore, keep it away from possible sources of ignition.

Only keep it in the closed original container and inaccessible to children.

Follow the notes and instructions on the container.

United States: The washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratios limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container. Use BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent. ◀



#### Adding washer fluid

Only add washer fluid when the engine is cool, and then close the cover completely to avoid contact between the washer fluid and hot engine parts.

Otherwise, there is a danger of fire and a risk to personal safety if the fluid is spilled. ◀

### Washer fluid reservoir



All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with a mixture of windshield washer concentrate and tap water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Mix the washer fluid before adding to find the right mixture.

Do not add windshield washer concentrate and antifreeze undiluted and do not fill with pure water; this could damage the wiper system.

Do not mix window washer concentrates of different manufacturers because they can clog the windshield washer nozzles.

Recommended minimum fill quantity: 0.2 US gal/1 liter.

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### Shifting



Shifting into 5th or 6th gear

When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, push the gearshift lever to the right; otherwise, inadvertent shifting into 3rd or 4th gear could lead to engine damage. ◀

### Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance push the selector lever dynamically to the left and engage the reverse gear.

## STEPTRONIC TRANSMISSION

### Selector lever positions

#### D Drive

Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

#### R is Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

#### N Neutral:

The vehicle may roll. Use in automatic car washes, e.g.

#### P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive wheels are blocked.


Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.



## Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

## Engaging a selector lever position

 Press on the brake pedal until you start driving

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start. ◀

The selector lever can only be taken out of selector lever position P if the ignition is on or the engine is running.

With the vehicle is stationary, press on the brake pedal before shifting out of selector lever position P or N; otherwise, the selector lever is blocked: shift lock.

A lock prevents inadvertent shifting into selector lever position P or R.

## Canceling the lock



Press button on the front of the selector lever, arrow.

## Sport program and manual mode M/S

### Activating the sport program



Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.

The engaged selector lever position, such as S1, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

### Activating the M/S manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.
2. Push the selector lever forward or backward.

Manual mode becomes active and the selector lever position is changed.

The engaged selector lever position is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

Once maximum engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

### Switching to manual mode

- ▷ To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- ▷ To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for example downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.



The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the currently selected gear.

### Manual mode M/S: prevent automatic upshifting

Once maximum engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

For vehicles with Steptronic Sport transmission, automatic shift operations are not performed if one of the following conditions is met:

- ▷ DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ TRACTION is activated.

In addition, the kickdown is deactivated.

With the respective transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and the left shift paddle. However, this effect is not produced via the shift paddles when switching briefly from D to manual mode.

### Ending the sport program/manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Shift paddles for Steptronic Sport transmission



The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

- ▷ Shift up: briefly pull right shift paddle.

- ▷ Shift down: briefly pull left shift paddle.
- ▷ With the respective transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by pulling and holding the left shift paddle.

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for example downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

If the shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission temporarily switches to manual mode.

If the selector lever is still in selector lever position D with the respective transmission version, it is possible to switch back into the automatic mode:

- ▷ Pull and hold right shift paddle.  
Or
- ▷ In addition to the briefly pulled right shift paddle, briefly pull the left shift paddle.

In the manual mode, after conservative driving for a certain amount of time or if there has been no acceleration or shifting of the shift paddles within a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

### Displays in the instrument cluster



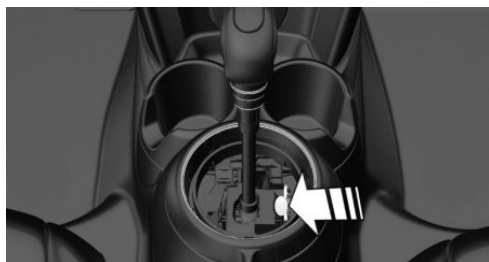
The selector lever position is displayed, e.g.: P.

### Manually release the transmission lock

Should the selector lever be blocked in selector lever position P despite the ignition being turned on, the brake being depressed and the unlock button being pressed, the transmission lock can be manually canceled:

Before unlocking the transmission lock manually, engage the parking brake forcefully to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

1. Loosen the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve over the selector lever. Unplug the cable connector if needed.
3. Using the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 199, press the yellow release lever downward, arrow.



4. Move the selector lever slightly toward the rear; to do this press the unlock button on the front of the selector lever.  
Release the release lever.
5. Bring the selector lever into the desired position.

## Steptronic Sport transmission: Launch Control

### The concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction.

### Hints



#### Component wear

Do not use Launch Control too often; otherwise, this may result in premature wear of components due to the high stress placed on the vehicle. ◀

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in, refer to page 134, period.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode, refer to page 94.


### Requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is warmed up, that is, after uninterrupted driving of at least 6 miles/10 km.

To start with Launch Control do not steer the steering wheel.

### Start with launch control

While the engine is running:

1.  Press button and select SPORT with Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 96.

The instrument cluster displays TRACTION in combination with SPORT. The DSC OFF indicator lamp lights up.

2. Engage selector lever position S.
3. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
4. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.  
A flag symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.
5. The starting engine speed adjusts. Within 3 seconds, release the brake.

Before using Launch Control, allow the transmission to cool down for approx. 5 minutes.

# DISPLAYS

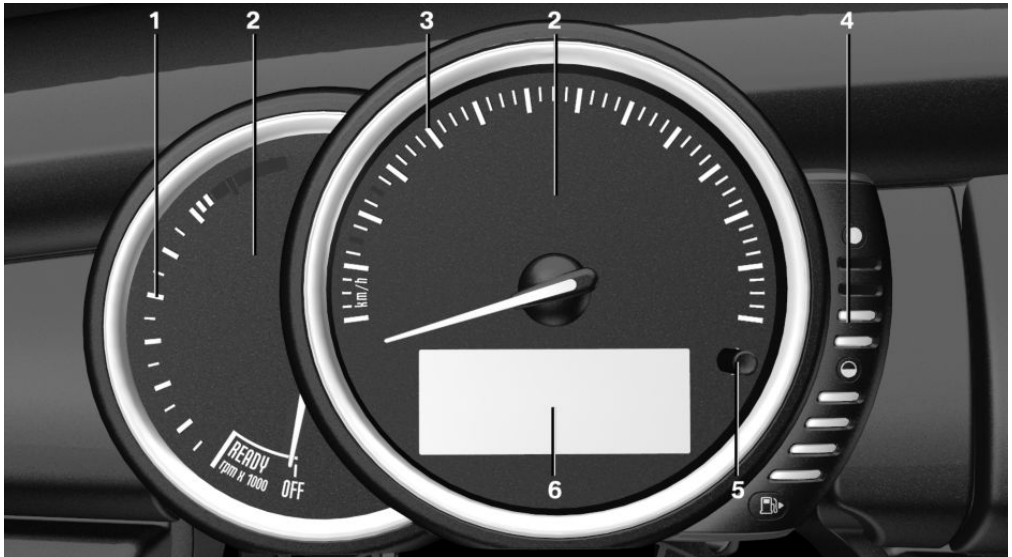
## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

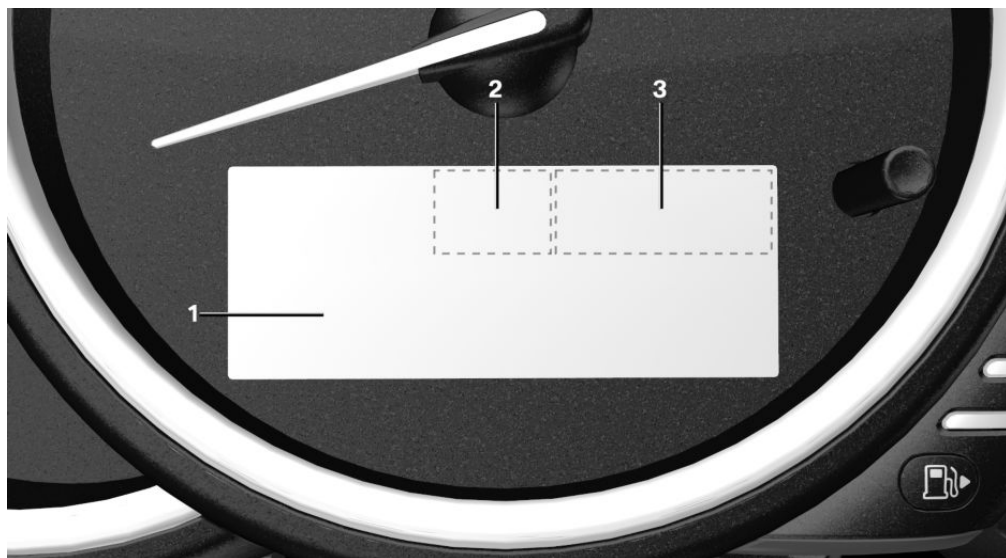
## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

### Overview, instrument cluster



- |   |                              |                    |   |                     |                    |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------|---|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1 | Tachometer                   | <a href="#">64</a> | 4 | Fuel gauge          | <a href="#">64</a> |
| 2 | Messages, e.g. Check Control |                    | 5 | Display/reset miles | <a href="#">64</a> |
| 3 | Speedometer                  |                    | 6 | Electronic displays | <a href="#">60</a> |

## Electronic displays



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>1</b> Driver assistance systems<br/>Messages, e.g. Check Control<br/>Time <a href="#">64</a><br/>External temperature <a href="#">64</a><br/>Selection lists <a href="#">67</a><br/>Total miles/trip odometer <a href="#">64</a></p> | <p>On-board computer <a href="#">67</a><br/><b>2</b> Selector lever position display <a href="#">55</a><br/>Gear shift indicator <a href="#">65</a><br/><b>3</b> Driving Dynamics Control <a href="#">96</a><br/>Status</p> |
|--|---|

## CHECK CONTROL

### The concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an acoustic signal may be output and a text message may appear on the radio.

## Indicator/warning lights

### General information

The indicator and warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

### Red lights

#### Safety belt reminder



Flashing or illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also

be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

### Airbag system



Airbag system and belt tensioner are defective.

Have the vehicle checked by the service center immediately.

### Parking brake, brake system



The parking brake is set.

For additional information, refer to Release parking brake, refer to page 51.



### Front-end collision warning



Illuminated: advance warning is issued, e.g., when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Increase distance.

Flashing: acute warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed.

Intervention by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

### Pedestrian warning



If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, the symbol lights up and a signal sounds.

## Orange lights

### Active Cruise Control



The number bars shows the selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead.

For more information, see Camera-based cruise control, ACC, refer to page 98.

### Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control



Illuminated: vehicle driving ahead detected.

Flashing: the conditions are not adequate for operating the system.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

## Yellow lights

### Anti-lock Braking System ABS



Avoid abrupt braking if possible. Braking force boost in some cases defective. Stop carefully. Take into account longer

brake travel. Have this checked by the service center immediately.



### DSC Dynamic Stability Control



Flashing: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and adapt driving profile to the driving circumstances.

Illuminated: DSC failed. Have the system checked by the service center.

For additional information, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC, refer to page 94.

### DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated



Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched off or Dynamic Traction Control DTC is switched on.

For additional information, refer to Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page [94](#), and Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page [95](#).

### Flat Tire Monitor FTM



The Flat Tire Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

For additional information, refer to Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page [84](#).

### Tire Pressure Monitor TPM



Illuminated: the Tire Pressure Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Flashing and then continuously illuminated: no flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

- ▷ Interference through systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ TPM could not conclude the reset: perform the reset of the system again.
- ▷ A wheel without TPM electronics is fitted: have the service center check it if needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by your service center.

For additional information, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page [81](#).

### Steering system



Steering system in some cases defective.

Have the steering system checked by the service center.

### Engine functions



Illuminated: vehicle generates increased exhaust emissions. It is possible to continue driving. Exhaust system in some cases defective.

Flashing: increased engine load damages the catalytic converter. Continue driving with a lower engine load. Possible engine problem.

Have the vehicle checked by the service center.

For additional information, refer to On-board Diagnostics socket, refer to page [198](#).

### Green lights

#### Turn signal



Turn signal on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

For additional information, refer to Turn signal, refer to page [52](#).

### Parking lights, headlight control



Parking lights or headlights are activated.

For additional information, refer to Parking lights/low beams, headlight control, refer to page [73](#).

### Front fog lights



Front fog lights are activated.

For additional information, refer to Front fog lights, refer to page [76](#).

## High-beam Assistant



High-beam Assistant is switched on. High beams are activated and off automatically as a function of the traffic situation.

For additional information, refer to High-beam Assistant, refer to page 75.

## Cruise control



The system is switched on. It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

## Blue lights

### High beams



High beams are activated. For additional information, refer to High beams, refer to page 52.

## General lamps



At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored. The symbol is shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

## Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lights.

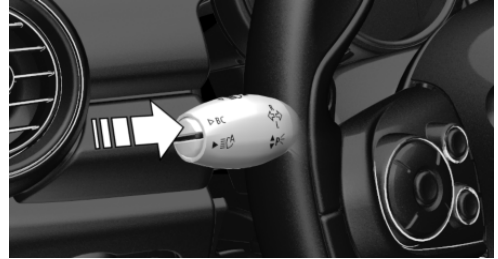
## Supplementary text messages

Additional information, such as on the cause of an error or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the radio display.

To view the entire text line for line: turn the right-hand knob on the radio.



## Hiding Check Control messages



Press the onboard computer button on the turn signal lever.

- ▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively. These messages can be faded for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.
- ▷ Other Check Control messages are faded automatically after approx. 20 seconds. They are stored and can be displayed again later.

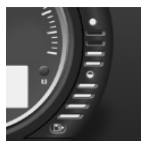
## Displaying stored Check Control messages

1.  Press button.
2.  "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Check Control"
5. Selecting the desired Check Control message

## Messages after trip completion

Special messages displayed while driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

## FUEL GAUGE



Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

The arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

Notes on refueling, refer to page [172](#).

## TACHOMETER

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

## ODOMETER AND TRIP ODOMETER

### The concept

Odometer and trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster.

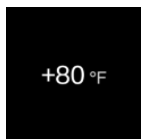
### Resetting the trip odometer



Press the knob.

- ▷ The odometer is displayed when the ignition is switched off.
- ▷ When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

## EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE



If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

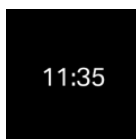


Ice on roads

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C, roads might be icy.

Therefore, drive carefully on bridges and shaded roads, e.g., to avoid the increased risk of an accident. ◀

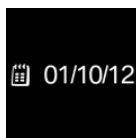
## TIME



The time is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Setting the time on the radio, refer to page [69](#).

## DATE



The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Set the date on the radio, refer to page [69](#).

## RANGE

### Display



With a low remaining range:

- ▷ A Check Control message is displayed briefly.
- ▷ The remaining range is shown on the computer.
- ▷ With a dynamic driving style - e.g., taking curves aggressively - engine operation might vary.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.





Refuel promptly

Refuel no later than at a range of 30 miles/50 km or engine operation might fail and damage might occur. ◀



## Displaying the cruising range

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Instrument cluster display"
4. "Range"

## CURRENT FUEL CONSUMPTION

### The concept

Displays the current fuel consumption. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

## SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

### The concept



After the ignition is turned on the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

Your service specialist can read the current service requirements from your remote control.




### Display

#### Detailed information on service requirements

The radio will display detailed information about service requirements.

1.  Press button.
2.  "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Service required"
5. Select the desired entry to view detailed information.



## Symbols

Symbols	Description
	No service is currently required.
	The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	The service deadline has already passed.

## Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the required inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1.  Press button.
2.  "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Service required"
5. "§ Vehicle inspection" or "§ Emission inspection"
6. "Change date"
7. Enter the desired appointment.

## GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR



### The concept

The system recommends the most fuel efficient gear for the current driving situation.



Depending on the vehicle's features and country version of the vehicle, the gear shift indicator is active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and with manual transmission.

Suggestions to shift gear up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Manual transmission: displaying

Example	Description
	Fuel efficient gear is set.
	Shift into fuel efficient gear.

## Steptronic transmission: Displaying

Example	Description
	Fuel efficient gear is set.
	Shift into fuel efficient gear.

## SPEED LIMIT DETECTION

### The concept

#### Speed limit detection

Speed limit detection uses a symbol in the shape of a traffic sign to display the currently detected speed limit. The camera at the base of the interior rearview mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with extra symbols for wet road conditions, etc. are also detected and compared with the vehicle's onboard data, such as for the rain sensor, and will be displayed depending on the situation.

Without a navigation system, the system is subject to limitations imposed by technology. Speed limits with extra text characters are always displayed.

#### Hints

Speed limits when towing a trailer are not shown.



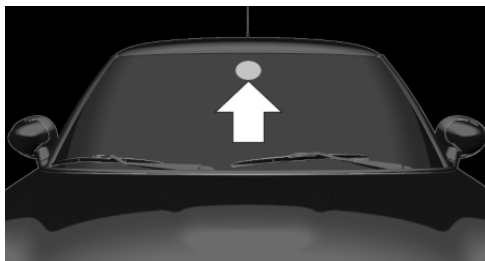
#### Personal judgment

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

The system assists the driver and does not replace the human eye. ◀

### At a glance



#### Camera



The camera is found near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

### Switching on/off

-  Press button.
-  "Settings"
- "Instrument cluster display"
- "Speed limit information"

If speed limit detection is switched on, it can be displayed on the info display in the instrument cluster via the computer.

### Display

The following is displayed in the instrument cluster:

## Speed limit detection



The last speed limit detected.

Without a navigation system the traffic signals are grayed out after curves or longer stretches of roadway.



Without navigation system: speed limit detection switched on but no speed limit or cancellation is detected.

## System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▶ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- ▶ When signs are concealed by objects.
- ▶ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▶ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▶ When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- ▶ In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▶ When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.
- ▶ If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- ▶ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

## SELECTION LISTS IN THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

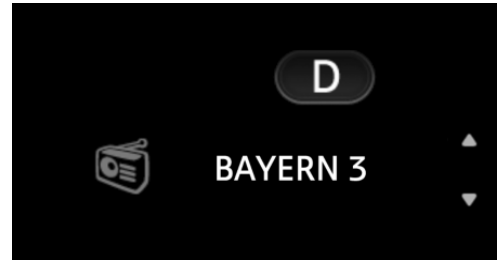
### The concept

With the buttons on the steering wheel and the display in the instrument cluster the following can be displayed or operated:

- ▶ Current audio source.

It also displays programs of the Driving Dynamics Control.

### Display

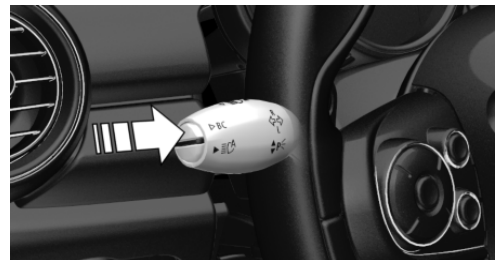


### Activating a list and adjusting the setting

Button the steering wheel	Function
	Activate the respective list and select the desired settings.

## ON-BOARD COMPUTER

### Calling up information on the info display





Press the onboard computer button on the turn signal lever.

Information is displayed in the info display of the instrument cluster.

## Calling up information in the radio

Information is also shown on the radio display.

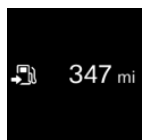
1.  Press button.
2.  "Vehicle Info"
3. "Onboard info"

## Resetting values

1. Select the desired value.
2. "Reset?"

## Information at a glance

### Info display



Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information in the info display:

▷ Range.

- ▷ GREEN Info.  
When GREEN Mode is activated.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption.
- ▷ Current fuel consumption.
- ▷ Average speed.
- ▷ Date.
- ▷ Engine temperature display.
- ▷ Speed limit detection.
- ▷ Speed.



### Radio

Selected information is shown on the radio.

- ▷ Range.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption.
- ▷ Average speed.

## Adjusting the info display

You can select what information from the computer is to be displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Instrument cluster display"
4. Select the desired displays.

## Information in detail

### Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.

It is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km.

### GREEN info

Description of GREEN info, refer to page [143](#).

### Average fuel consumption

This is calculated for the period while the engine is running.

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the distance traveled since the last reset by the on-board computer.

### Average speed

Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped are not included in the calculation of the average speed.

### Resetting average values

Press and hold the onboard computer button on the turn signal lever.

### Engine temperature display

Displays the current engine temperature, based on a combination of coolant and motor oil temperature. As soon as the optimum operating temperature has been attained, the indicator is in the center position.

If the engine oil or coolant, thus the engine, become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed.

Check the coolant level, refer to page 195.

### Speed limit detection

Description of the speed limit detection, refer to page 66, function.



## SPEED WARNING

### The concept

Displays speed limit which, when reached, should cause a warning to be issued.



The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit once by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

### Displaying, setting or changing the limit

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Speed"
4. "Warning at:"
5. Turn the right knob until the desired limit is displayed.
6. Press the right button.

The speed limit is stored.

### Activating/deactivating the limit

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Speed"
4. "Warning"

### Setting your current speed as the limit

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"

3. "Speed"
4. "Select current speed"



The current vehicle speed is stored as the limit.

## SETTINGS ON THE RADIO



The following settings are created on the radio:

- ▷ Time, date.
- ▷ Formats, units of measure.

### Formats and units of measure

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Language/Units"
4. Select the desired format or unit of measure:
  - ▷ "Language:"
  - ▷ "Consumption:"
  - ▷ "Distance:"
  - ▷ "Pressure:"
  - ▷ "Temperature:"
5. Set the desired unit of measure or language.

### Setting the time and date

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Time/Date"
4. Select desired menu entry:
  - ▷ "Time:"
  - ▷ "Time format:"
  - ▷ "Date:"
  - ▷ "Date format:"
5. Turn the right knob until the desired setting is selected.

## LED RING ON THE CENTRAL INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

### The concept

The LED ring displays light animations to represent specific functions.

### Basic displays

Basic functions, for example the tachometer, can be set to be displayed continually if so desired.

### Event displays

Functions that are only displayed temporarily, for example the volume or temperature settings, can be set as event displays.

Several vehicle assistance functions can also be displayed on the LED ring. This display corresponds with the displays of the function in the respective display.

### Example: tachometer



Like the tachometer in the instrument cluster, the light animations of the tachometer's basic display show the current RPMs and the respective RPM warning margins.

### Display





- ▷ Arrow 1: current RPM.
- ▷ Arrow 2: prewarning field.
- ▷ Arrow 3: warning field.

### Switching on/off LED ring



1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Center Instrument"
4. "Center Instrument"

### Adjusting the LED ring

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Center Instrument"
4. "Basic display" or "Event display"
5. Select desired setting.

### Setting the brightness

The brightness can be adjusted when night lighting is active in the instrument cluster.

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Center Instrument"
4. "Brightness"
5. Turn the right-hand knob.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

## CHRONO PACKAGE IN THE COCKPIT

### The concept

The Chrono package consists of three display instruments in the cockpit, where the engine oil pressure, the turbocharger boost, and the time are displayed. In addition, intermediate and total times can be measured using the stop watch.

The display elements of the Chrono package mainly support a sporty driving style, e.g, on racetracks.

## Overview



- 1 Engine oil pressure display
- 2 Turbocharger boost display
- 3 Time/stop watch

## Engine oil pressure

The current engine oil pressure is displayed.

## Turbocharger boost

The current boost of the turbocharger is displayed.

## Stop watch

### General information

The stop watch contains the following features:

- ▷ Measuring the total time.
- ▷ Measuring and storing of up to nine lap times.
- ▷ Displaying the time.

⌚ The red indicator light indicates that the stop watch is active.

### Overview, buttons



- ▷ MODE button, arrow 1.
- ▷ START/STOP button, arrow 2.
- ▷ RESET/LAP buttons, arrow 3.

### Displaying the measured times

The times measured using the stop watch are shown in minutes and seconds on the display. For times greater than 60 minutes, the numbers of hours and the minutes with seconds are alternatively displayed.

If the stop watch is running, the seconds are also shown using a seconds pointer in the scale of the display element.

### Measuring the total time

1. Press button, arrow 2, to start the stop watch.
2. Press button, arrow 2, again to stop the stop watch.

### Lap times

#### General information

It is possible to measure and store up to nine lap times. Older lap times are overwritten.

#### Measuring and storing a lap time

1. Press button, arrow 2, to start the stop watch.
2. Press button, arrow 3, to measure and store a lap time.

The lap time is briefly shown in the display and via the seconds pointer of the stop watch, e.g., LAP 1 with the measured time. The stop watch continues running in the background.

3. If needed, press button, arrow 3, again to measure a further lap time.

#### Calling up lap times

1. Press button, arrow 1, repeatedly until LAP 1 is shown on the display.

2. Press button, arrow 2, to call up the individual lap times.

### Deleting lap times

1. Press button, arrow 1, repeatedly until LAP 1 is shown on the display.
2. Press button, arrow 3, to delete all stored lap times.

### Displaying the time

The time is copied from the instrument cluster.

Press button, arrow 1, repeatedly until the time is displayed.



# LIGHTS

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## OVERVIEW



- 1 Rear fog lights
- 2 Front fog lights
- 3 Depending on the equipment: automatic headlight control, cornering lights, High-beam Assistant, welcome lights, daytime running lights
- 4 Lights off, daytime running lights
- 5 Parking lights / daytime running lights
- 6 Depending on the equipment: low beams, welcome lights, High-beam Assistant
- 7 Instrument lighting


## PARKING LIGHTS, CORNERING LIGHTS AND ROADSIDE PARKING LIGHTS

### General information

Position of switch: 0, , 

If the driver door is opened with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off at these switch settings.

### Parking lights

Position of switch : the vehicle's lights light up on all sides, e.g., for parking.

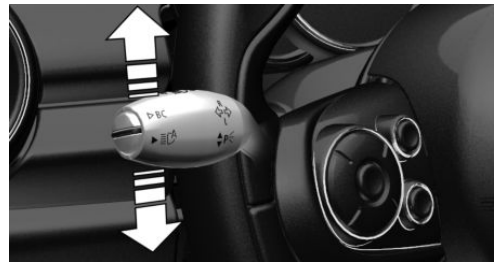
Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

When parking you better turn on just the roadside parking light.

### Low beams

Position of switch  with the ignition switched on: the low beams light up.

### Roadside parking lights



The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

## Switching on



With the ignition switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

## Switch off

Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.



## WELCOME LIGHTS AND HEADLIGHT COURTESY DELAY FEATURE

### Welcome lights

When the vehicle is parked, leave the switch in position  or : parking and interior lights come on briefly when the vehicle is unlocked depending on the ambient brightness.

### Activating/deactivating

Set via radio.

-  Press button.
-  "Settings"
- "Lighting"
- "Welcome light"

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

### Headlight courtesy delay feature

The low beams stay lit for a short while after the radio-ready state is switched off if the lights are turned off and the headlight flasher is switched on.

### Setting the duration


Set via radio.

-  Press button.
-  "Settings"

- "Lighting"
- "Pathway lighting:"
- Set length of time.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

## AUTOMATIC HEADLIGHT CONTROL

Position of switch : the low beams are activated and off automatically, e.g., in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

The low beams always stay on when the fog lights are activated.







### Personal responsibility

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when to turn the lights on in response to ambient lighting conditions.

E. g. the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks under these conditions, you should always switch on the lights manually. ◀



## DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS

With the ignition switched on, the daytime running lights light up in position ,  or . After the ignition is switched off, the parking lights light up in position .

### Activating/deactivating


In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.

Set via radio.

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Daytime running lamps"

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

## CORNERING LAMP

Position of switch  : going around corners, the cornering lamp also lights the interior area of the curve. Below a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h when the flasher is switched on and the steering angle is detected, there is automatic activation.

### Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.


Cornering light is disrupted or failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

## HIGH-BEAM ASSISTANT

### The concept

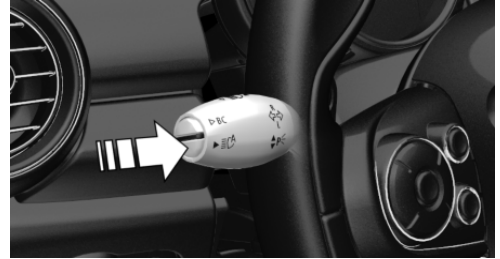
When the low beams are activated, this system automatically switches the high beams on and off. The procedure is controlled by a camera on the front of the interior rearview mirror. The assistant ensures that the high beams are activated whenever the traffic situation allows. The driver can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off as usual.

### Note



 Personal responsibility  
The High-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore,

manually reel off the high beams in situations where required to avoid a safety risk. ◀

### Activating



The High-beam Assistant can be activated when the low beams are activated.

1. Depending on the equipment, turn the light switch into position  or .
2. Press button on the turn signal lever, arrow.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

When the low beams are on, the lights are automatically brightened or dimmed.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, e.g., in towns and cities.



The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

### Switching the high beams on and off manually



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

The High-beam Assistant can be switched off when manually adjusting the light. To reactivate the High-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

### System limits

The system is not fully functional in situations such as the following, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.
- ▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on freeways.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▷ At low speeds.
- ▷ When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

## FOG LIGHTS

### Front fog lights

The low beams must be switched on.



Press button. The green indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 74, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

### Rear fog lights

The low beams or front fog lights must be switched on.



Press button. The yellow indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 74, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the rear fog lights.

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING

### Adjusting



The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

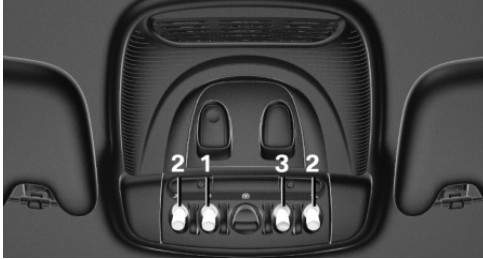
## INTERIOR LIGHTS

### General information

The interior lights, footwell lights, access lights and courtesy lights are controlled automatically.

Thumb wheel for the instrument lighting controls brightness of some of these features.

## Overview



- 1 Interior lights
- 2 Reading lamp
- 3 Ambient light

## Switching the interior lights on and off



Press button.

To reel off permanently: press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Switch back on: press button.

## Reading lights



Press button.

Reading lights are located in the front next to the interior light.

## Ambient light

Depending on your optional features lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the interior.

## Changing color



Push the switch forward or back: manual color change.





Push and hold the switch forward or back: automatic color change. Push the switch again to end color changes.

## Setting the brightness

Via the thumb wheel you may adjust the brightness of the ambient light for the instrument lighting or radio.

Set via radio.

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Set the desired brightness.

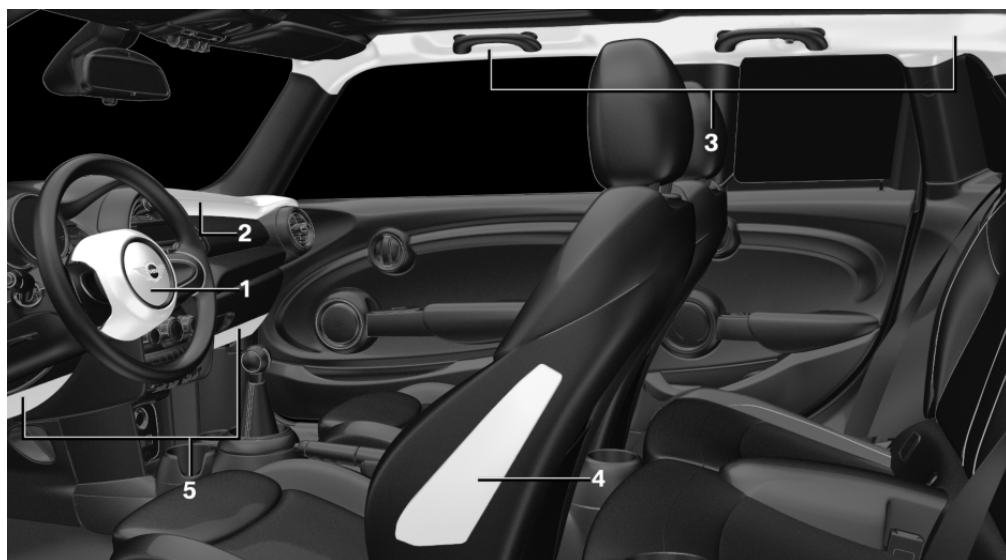
# SAFETY

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## AIRBAGS



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Front airbag, driver</li> <li>2 Front airbag, front passenger</li> <li>3 Head airbag</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4 Side airbag</li> <li>5 Knee airbags</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

### Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate restraint.

### Side airbags

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

### Head airbags

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.

## Knee airbag

The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.

### Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.



Information on how to ensure the optimal protective effect of the airbags

- ▶ Keep at a distance from the airbags.
- ▶ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim, holding your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- ▶ There should be no person, animals, or objects between an airbag and a person.
- ▶ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- ▶ Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, e. g., for GPS devices or' mobile phones.
- ▶ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the footwell; otherwise, leg injuries might occur when front airbag is activated.
- ▶ Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not approved specifically for seats with integrated side airbags.
- ▶ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- ▶ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag and do not rest against the head airbag; otherwise, injuries might occur when airbag is activated.
- ▶ Do not remove the airbag system.
- ▶ Do not remove the steering wheel.

- ▶ Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- ▶ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, the seats, the roof pillars and the sides of the roofliner. ◀

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive individuals.



Malfunction, deactivation and after de-ploying the airbags

Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered; otherwise, you may risk burns.

Only have the airbags checked, repaired or dismantled and the airbag generator scrapped by the service center or an authorized repair shop for handling explosives.

Non-professional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or unintentional activation of the airbag - both may lead to injury. ◀

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

### Functional readiness of the airbag system



When the ignition is reel on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

### Airbag system malfunctioning

- ▶ Warning lamp does not come on when the ignition is turned on.
- ▶ The warning lamp lights up continuously.

**!** In case of a malfunction have airbag system checked immediately.

In case of a malfunction have airbag system checked immediately; otherwise, there is a risk that the system does not function as expected in case of a severe accident. ◀

### Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee and side airbag on the front passenger's side are either activated or deactivated.

**!** Leave feet in the footwell

Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell; otherwise, proper functioning of the front passenger airbag might not be assured. ◀

**!** Child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety notes and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children. ◀

### Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion

- ▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by your vehicle's manufacturer.
- ▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▷ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.
- ▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

### Indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags



The indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbags.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.



- ▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when, e.g., a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

### Detected child seats

The system generally detects children seated in a child seat, particularly in child seats required by NHTSA when the vehicle was manufactured.



After installing a child seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

### Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

The explosive power that activates driver's/ front passenger's airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger's seat.

With a respective message appearing on Control Display calibrate the front seats to keep the accuracy of this function over the long-term.


### Calibrating the front seats

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Move the respective seat all the way forward.
2. Move the respective seat forward again. It moves forward briefly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears. If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.


-  Unobstructed area of movement
- Ensure that the area of movement of the seats is unobstructed to avoid personal injury or damage to objects. ◀

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR TPM

### The concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires. For this purpose, sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure.

### Hints

-  Tire damage due to external factors
- Sudden tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance. ◀

With use of the system observe further information found under Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 176.

### Functional requirements



The system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure; otherwise, reliable signaling of tire pressure loss is not assured.

Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly.

### Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

1.  Press button.
2.  "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM)"



The status is displayed.

In addition, the current tire inflation pressures are displayed. It shows the actual values read;

they may vary depending on driving style or weather conditions.

### Carry out reset

Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

1. Start the engine - do not drive off.
2.  Press button.
3.  "Vehicle Info"
4. "Vehicle status"
5. "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM)"
6. To reset the tire pressure: "Perform reset"
7. Drive away.

"Resetting..." is displayed.

After driving faster than 19 mph/30 km/h for a short period, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as reference values. The resetting process is completed automatically while driving.

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

### Low tire pressure message



The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

- ▷ There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.
- ▷ A reset of the system was not carried out after a wheel was changed. The system therefore issues a warning based on the tire pressures before the last reset.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with regular tires or run-flat tires.  
Run-flat tires, refer to page 184, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.



Do not continue driving without run-flat tires

Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents. ◀

A low tire inflation pressure might turn on DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

### Actions in the event of a flat tire

#### Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tires.

The tire pressure gauge of the Mobility System, refer to page 185, can be used for this purpose.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If an identification is not possible, please contact the service center.

2. Fix the flat tire using the Mobility System, refer to page 185.

Use of tire sealant, e.g., the Mobility System, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if needed.

#### Run-flat tires

##### Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

##### Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is shown to be correct, it is possible that the Tire Pressure Monitor did not perform a reset. Then perform the reset.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on cargo load, driving style and road conditions.

A vehicle with an average load has a possible driving range of approx. 50 miles/80 km.

A vehicle with a damaged tire reacts differently, e.g., it has reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be shorter or longer depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.



Continued driving with a flat tire

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Your car handles differently when you lose tire inflation pressure, e.g., your lane stability is reduced when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. ◀



Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving and contact your service center. ◀

## Required inflation pressure check message

A Check Control message is displayed in the following situations

- ▷ The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done.
- ▷ Inflation was not carried out according to specifications.
- ▷ The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last confirmation.

In this case:

- ▷ Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
- ▷ Carry out a reset of the system after a tire change.

## System limits

The system does not function properly if a reset has not been carried out, e.g., a flat tire is reported though tire inflation pressures are correct.

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature. Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure. The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again. These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

## Malfunction



The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. No flat tire or loss of tire pressure can be detected.

Display in the following situations:

- ▷ A wheel without TPM electronics, such as an emergency wheel, is mounted: have the service center check it if needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by your service center.

- ▷ TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ Interference through systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

### Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction

indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## FTM FLAT TIRE MONITOR

### The concept

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

It detects a tire inflation pressure loss by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels while moving.



In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. This will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

### Functional requirements

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable flagging of a flat tire is not assured. Initialize the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

### Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed, e.g., whether the RPA is active.



1.  Press button.
2.  "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Flat Tire Monitor (FTM)"

The status is displayed.

## Initialization

When initializing the once set inflation tire pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1.  Press button.
2.  "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Flat Tire Monitor (FTM)"
5. Start the engine - do not drive off.
6. Start the initialization with "Flat Tire Monitor (FTM) reset".
7. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

## Indication of a flat tire



The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with regular tires or run-flat tires.  
Run-flat tires, refer to page 184, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.



Do not continue driving without run-flat tires

Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents. ◀

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if needed.

## System limits



Sudden tire damage

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance. ◀

A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- ▷ When the system has not been initialized.
- ▷ When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- ▷ Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

## Actions in the event of a flat tire

### Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tires.

The tire pressure gauge of the Mobility System, refer to page 185, can be used for this purpose.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If an identification is not possible, please contact the service center.

2. Fix the flat tire using the Mobility System, refer to page 185.

## Run-flat tires

### Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

### Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on cargo load, driving style and road conditions.

A vehicle with an average load has a possible driving range of approx. 50 miles/80 km.

A vehicle with a damaged tire reacts differently, e.g., it has reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be shorter or longer depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.



#### Continued driving with a flat tire

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Your car handles differently when you lose tire inflation pressure, e.g., your lane stability is reduced when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. ◀



#### Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving and contact your service center. ◀

## INTELLIGENT SAFETY

### The concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance system.

The intelligent safety systems can help prevent an imminent collision.

- ▷ Front-end collision warning with City Braking function, refer to page 87.
- ▷ Pedestrian warning with city braking function, refer to page 90

### Hints



#### Personal responsibility

The system does not serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

Be aware of the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings at all times, otherwise accidents are still possible despite all warnings. ◀



#### Adapting your speed and driving style

The displays and warnings of the system do not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions. ◀

**Be alert**

Due to system limitations, warnings may be not issued at all, or may be issued late or improperly. Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀

**Tow-starting and towing**

For towing the vehicle turn, switch off the Intelligent Safety systems; otherwise malfunctions of the individual braking systems might lead to accidents. ◀

**At a glance****Button in the vehicle**

Intelligent Safety button

**Switching on/off**

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.



Press button briefly:

- ▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- ▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently in use.



Press button again:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▷ The LED lights up green.



Hold down button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▷ The LED goes out.

**FRONT-END COLLISION WARNING WITH CITY BRAKING FUNCTION****The concept**

The system can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be prevented, the system will help reduce the collision speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and actuates brakes independently if needed.

The automatic braking intervention is done with limited force and duration.

The system is controlled via a camera in the base of the mirror.

The front-end collision warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

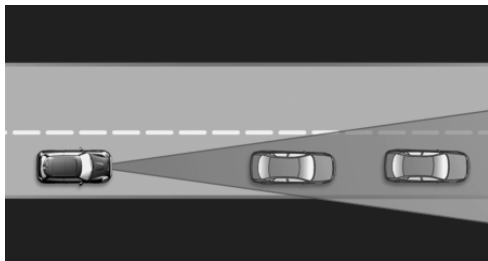
With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally the collision warning is delayed avoiding false alarm.

**General information**

The system warns at two levels of an imminent danger of collision at speeds from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. Time of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Appropriate braking kicks in at speeds of up to 35 mph/60 km/h.

## Detection range



It responds to objects if they are detected by the system.

## Hints

### Personal responsibility

The system does not serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

Be aware of the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings at all times, otherwise accidents are still possible despite all warnings. ◀

### Adapting your speed and driving style

The displays and warnings of the system do not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions. ◀

### Be alert

Due to system limitations, warnings may be not issued at all, or may be issued late or improperly. Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀


### Tow-starting and towing

For towing the vehicle turn, switch off the Intelligent Safety systems; otherwise malfunctions of the individual braking systems might lead to accidents. ◀

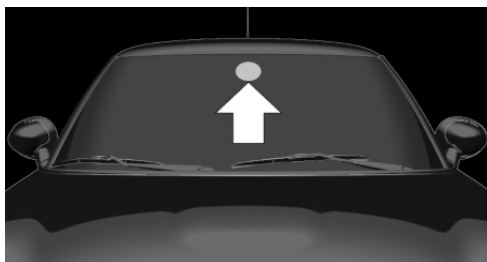
## At a glance

### Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety button

## Camera



The camera is found near the interior rearview mirror.


Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

### Switching on/off manually

 Press button briefly:

- ▶ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.



- ▶ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently in use.



Press button again:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▶ The LED lights up green.



Hold down button:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▶ The LED goes out.

## Setting the warning time

The warning time can be set on the radio.

### 1. Intelligent Safety button

The intelligent safety menu is displayed for a brief time on the radio display.

### 2. "Front. Coll. Warn."

### 3. "Warning time"

### 4. Setting the desired warning time

The selected warning time is stored for the profile currently in use.

## Warning with braking function

### Display

If a collision with a vehicle detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster.

Symbol	Measure
	The vehicle lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	The vehicle flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

## Prewarning

This warning is issued, e.g., when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

The driver must intervene actively when there is a prewarning.

## Acute warning with braking function

Warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a relatively high differential speed.

The driver must intervene actively when there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by a minor automatic braking intervention in a possible risk of collision.

Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous prewarning.

## Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: During a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention is executed only if DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

## System limits

### Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the camera viewing field or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, e.g. DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop knob.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.
- ▷ If there is constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e. g., from the sun low in the sky.

### Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, the more warnings are displayed. However, there may also be an excess of false warnings.

## PEDESTRIAN WARNING WITH CITY BRAKING FUNCTION

### The concept

The system can help prevent accidents with pedestrians.

The system issues a warning in the city driving speed area if there is imminent danger of a collision with pedestrians and includes a braking function.

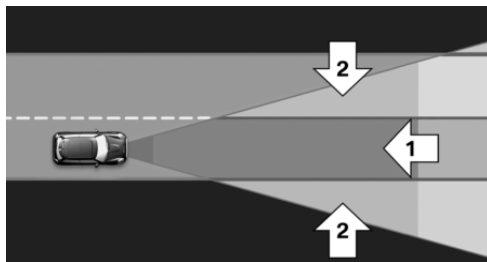
A camera at the base of the rearview mirror controls the system.

### General information

In daylight the system warns of possible collisions with pedestrians at speeds from about 6 mph/10 km/h to about 35 mph/60 km/h shortly before a collision the system supports you with a braking intervention.

Under those circumstances it reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

### Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas.

- ▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

## Hints



### Personal responsibility

The system does not serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

Be aware of the traffic situation and the vehicle's surroundings at all times, otherwise accidents are still possible despite all warnings. ◀



### Adapting your speed and driving style

The displays and warnings of the system do not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions. ◀



### Be alert

Due to system limitations, warnings may be not issued at all, or may be issued late or improperly. Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀



### Tow-starting and towing

For towing the vehicle turn, switch off the Intelligent Safety systems; otherwise malfunctions of the individual braking systems might lead to accidents. ◀

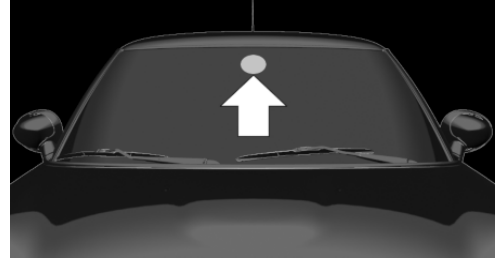
## At a glance

### Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety button

## Camera



The camera is found near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

### Switching on/off manually



Press button briefly:

- ▶ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- ▶ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently in use.



Press button again:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▶ The LED lights up green.



Hold down button:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▶ The LED goes out.

## Warning with braking function

### Display

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster.



The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

### Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: During a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention is executed only if DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

### System limits

#### Detection range

The detection potential of the camera is limited.

Thus a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians.

- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- ▷ Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- ▷ Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

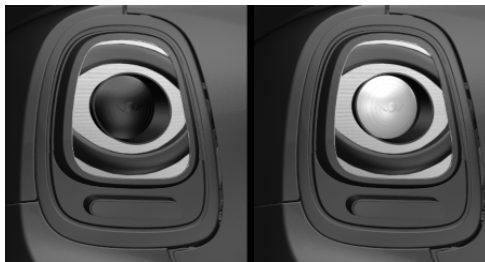
### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the camera viewing field or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, e.g. DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop knob.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.
- ▷ If there is constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e. g., from the sun low in the sky.
- ▷ When it is dark outside.

## BRAKE FORCE DISPLAY

### The concept



- ▷ During normal brake application, the brake lights light up.

- ▶ During heavy brake application, the flashers light up in addition.

# DRIVING STABILITY CONTROL SYSTEMS

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## ANTILOCK BRAKE SYSTEM ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle contains its steering power even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

## BRAKE ASSISTANT

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the greatest possible braking force boost. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency stop.

This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

## DSC DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL

### The concept

DSC prevents traction loss in the power wheels when driving off and accelerating.

DSC also recognizes unstable vehicle conditions such as fishtailing or nose-diving. Within the physical limits DSC helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes to the individual wheels.



Adjust your driving style to the situation

An appropriate driving style is always the responsibility of the driver.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, not even with DSC.

Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin by driving in a risky manner. ◀

### Indicator/warning lights



The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

### Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

### Deactivating DSC



Press and hold this button but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and displays DSC OFF.

The DSC system is switched off.

### Activating DSC



Press button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

### Indicator/warning lights

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.



The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

### Automatic activation

When DSC is deactivated, automatic activation occurs in the following situations:

- ▷ The vehicle has a flat tire.
- ▷ When activating cruise control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

## DTC DYNAMIC TRACTION CONTROL

### The concept

The DTC system is a version of the DSC where forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum headway on special road conditions or loose road surfaces, e.g., unplowed snowy roads, but with somewhat limited driving stability.

Activating the Dynamic Traction Control DTC provides maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

Therefore drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- ▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.

- ▷ When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose grounds.
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

### Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control

#### Activating DTC



Press button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up.

#### Deactivating DTC



Press button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

## PERFORMANCE CONTROL

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.

To increase maneuverability, with a correspondingly sporty driving style, wheels are braked individually.

## DYNAMIC DAMPING CONTROL

### The concept

The tuning of the suspension can be changed with the system.

### Programs

The system offers several different programs. Select the programs via the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 96.

## MID/GREEN

Balanced tuning of the shock absorbers for more comfort.

## SPORT


Consistently sporty tuning of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

## DRIVING DYNAMICS CONTROL

### The concept

The Driving Dynamics Control helps to fine-tune the vehicle's settings and features. Choose between three different programs. Driving Dynamics Control will activate the particular program.

### Operating the programs

Driving Dynamics Control	Program
	MID
	GREEN
	SPORT



## MID

For balanced tuning.

With each starting operation, MID is activated using the Start/Stop button.

## GREEN

GREEN, refer to page 142, provides consistent tuning to maximize range.

### Activating GREEN



Turn Driving Dynamics Control to the right until GREEN is displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Configuring GREEN

### Via the Driving Dynamics Control

1. Activate GREEN.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Configure the program.

### Via radio

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "Configure GREEN"
5. Configure the program.

For vehicles without a configurable SPORT program:

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "GREEN Mode"
4. Configure the program.

This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

## SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the engine control for greater driving agility.

With the appropriate equipment, the tuning of the suspension also changes and SPORT can be individually configured.

The configuration is stored for the profile currently in use.

### Activating SPORT

Turn Driving Dynamics Control to the left until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Configuring SPORT

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, SPORT can be individually configured.



Activating SPORT.



Select "Driving mode".

Configure the program.

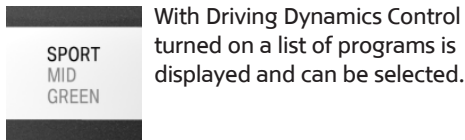
Set via radio.

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Driving mode"
4. "Configure SPORT"
5. Make the desired settings.

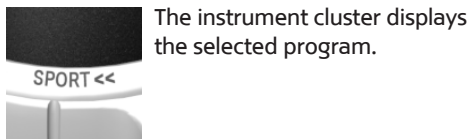
This configuration is retrieved when SPORT is activated.

## Displays

### Program selection



### Selected program



### Driving off without delay

After releasing the foot brake, start driving without delay, since the drive-off assistant will not hold the vehicle in place for more than approx. 2 seconds and the vehicle will begin to roll back. ◀

## DRIVE-OFF ASSISTANT

This system supports driving off on inclines. The parking brake is not required.

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

For vehicles with respective equipment versions, the possible holding duration amounts to 2 minutes.

# DRIVING COMFORT

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## CAMERA-BASED CRUISE CONTROL, ACC

### The concept

Use this system to select a desired speed that the vehicle will maintain automatically on clear roads.

To the extent possible, the system automatically adjusts the speed to a slower vehicle ahead of you.

A camera on the interior rear view mirror is used to detect vehicles driving ahead.

The distance that the vehicle maintains to the vehicle ahead of you can be varied.

For safety reasons, it depends on the speed.

To maintain a certain distance, the system automatically decelerates, applies the brakes lightly, or accelerates again if the vehicle ahead begins moving faster.

As soon as the road is clear, the vehicle accelerates to the desired speed.

The speed is also maintained downhill, but may not be maintained uphill if engine power is insufficient.

### General information

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the set drive mode, refer to page 96, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

### Hints



#### Personal responsibility

Even an active system holds the driver responsible for his or her driving, particularly for staying in your lane, adjusting your speed, keeping your distance and for your driving style all in relation to traffic.

Technically the system has its limits, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations.

Monitor your driving, be on the alert, observe the vehicle surroundings and other traffic and react when needed, e.g. through braking, steering or make evasive maneuvers - risk of accident. ◀










#### Unfavorable weather conditions

In the event of unfavorable weather and light conditions, for instance if there is rain, snowfall, slush, fog or glare, this may result in poorer recognition of traffic situations as well as short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already detected. Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. Intervene actively when necessary, e.g., by braking, steering or making an evasive maneuver, otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀

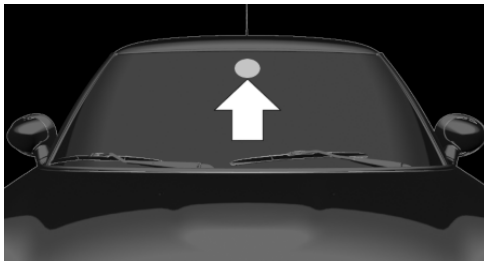
## At a glance

### Buttons on the steering wheel

Press button	Function
	Cruise control on/off, interrupt, refer to page 99
	Store/maintain speed, refer to page 100
	Resume speed, refer to page 100
	Reduce distance, refer to page 100
	Increase distance, refer to page 100
	Increase, maintain, and store speed, refer to page 100
	Reduce, maintain, and store speed, refer to page 100

Buttons are arranged according to vehicle's series, optional features and country specifications.

### Camera



The camera is found near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

## Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

### Switching on



Press button on the steering wheel.



Display in the instrument cluster lights up.



Display in the instrument cluster lights up. The current speed is adopted as desired speed and displayed with symbol.

Cruise control can be used.

### Switch off



Deactivated or interrupted system

With deactivated or interrupted system use your brakes, steering and moves as usual to avoid the chance of an accident. ◀



Press button on the steering wheel.

- ▷ If active: press twice.
- ▷ If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

### Interrupting



Press button on the steering wheel.


The system is automatically interrupted if:


- ▷ The brakes are applied.
- ▷ The clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- ▷ Selector lever position N is set.
- ▷ DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ DSC is actively controlling stability.

- ▷ The detection range of the camera is impaired, e.g., by soiling, heavy precipitation or glare effects from the sun.
- ▷ The vehicle in front decelerates below a speed of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

## Maintaining, storing, and changing the speed


### Hints



 Adjusting the desired speed  
Modify desired speed to road conditions and be ready to brake at all times; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀


 Differences in speed  
Large differences in speed relative to other vehicles cannot be compensated by the system such as in the following situations:

- ▷ When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▷ When another vehicle suddenly swerves into the wrong lane. ◀



### Maintaining/storing the speed

 Press button.  
Or:







Press  or  button in the interrupted state. When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

 The speed is displayed on the symbol.  
When cruise control is maintained or stored, DSC Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on if needed.


### Changing the speed

 or  button: press until the desired speed is set.


If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.


- ▷  or  button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷  or  button: each time it is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.
-  or  button: hold down to repeat the corresponding action.

### Distance


 Select a distance  
Adjust the distance according to the traffic and weather conditions; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. Maintain the prescribed safety distance. ◀


### Reduce distance

 Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

 The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.


### Increase distance

 Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

 The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

## Calling up the desired speed and distance

### While driving


 Press button with the system interrupted. Desired speed and distance are then continued with these settings. The se-

lected distance is briefly displayed in the info display.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:


- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When the ignition is switched off.


## Changing between cruise control with/without distance control


 Traffic ahead

The cruise control does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. Take this factor into account – you yourself must react; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀

To reel over to cruise control:

 Press and hold this button, or


 Press and hold this button.

 The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on and check-control message is displayed as soon as the reel is made to cruise control.

To reel back to the camera-based cruise control, press one of the buttons.


## Displays in the instrument cluster

### Desired speed

 In addition to the indicator lamp, the desired speed is displayed in the central information display.

- ▷ The indicator lights up green: the system is active.
- ▷ The indicator lights up orange: the system has been interrupted.
- ▷ No display: system is switched off.

### Brief status display

 Selected desired speed.

If --- appears briefly on the display for Check Control messages, it is possible that the system requirements are currently not ready for operations.

### Distance to vehicle ahead of you


Selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead is briefly displayed in the left hand portion of the info display.

#### Distance display


 Distance 1


 Distance 2


 Distance 3

 Distance 4  
This value is set after the system is switched on.

### Indicator/warning lights

 Personal responsibility  
The indicator and warning lights do not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her desired driving speed and style to the traffic conditions. ◀

 The vehicle symbol lights up orange:  
A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

 The vehicle symbol flashes orange:  
The conditions are not adequate for the system to work.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by

pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.



The vehicle symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds:

You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.



The system has been interrupted or distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was not detected.



Distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was detected.

### Changing between cruise control with/without distance control

Display in the instrument cluster:



Cruise Control without distance control.



Camera-based cruise control with distance control.

## System limits

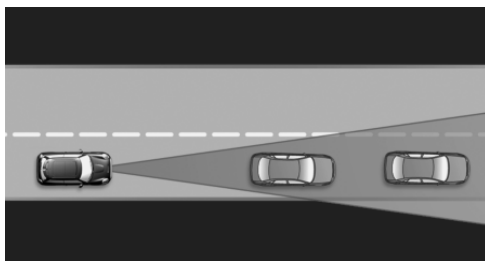
### Speed range

The system is best used on well-constructed roads. The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

The max. speed that can be set is 85 mph/140 km/h.

Comply with the legal speed limit and safety distance in every situation when using the system.

## Detection range



The detection capability of the system and the automatic braking capability are limited.

Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.



Limited detection potential

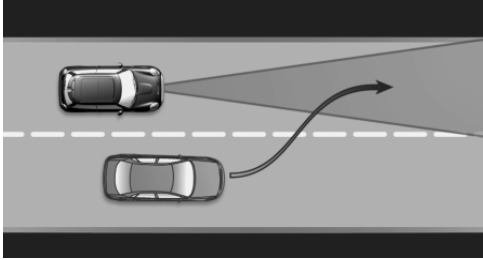
Because the camera detection system's potential is limited, you should be alert at all times so that you can intervene actively, if needed; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀

## Deceleration

The system does not decelerate for:

- ▷ Pedestrians, cyclists or similar slow road users.
- ▷ Red traffic lights.
- ▷ Cross traffic.
- ▷ Oncoming traffic.
- ▷ Unlit vehicles or vehicles with defective lighting at night.

## Swerving vehicles



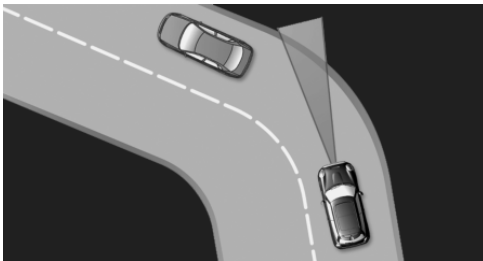
A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.



### Swerving vehicles

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. This also applies to major speed differences to vehicles driving ahead of you, e.g., when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed. You must react yourself; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀

## Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

In tight curves the system offers only restricted detection where a vehicle ahead of you might be detected late or not at all.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the gas pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

## Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails or was automatically deactivated.

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ When an object was not correctly detected.
- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the camera viewing field or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▷ Up to 20 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop knob.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle shipment.

## CRUISE CONTROL

### The concept

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

The system brakes on downhill gradients if engine braking is insufficient.

#### Unfavorable conditions

Do not use the system if unfavorable conditions make it impossible to drive at a constant speed, e.g.:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.

Otherwise, you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident. ◀

### General information

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the set drive mode, refer to page 96, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

## Controls

### Overview

Press button	Function
	System on/off, interrupt
	Store speed
	Resume speed



Increasing, maintaining or storing the speed



Reducing, maintaining or storing the speed

### Switching on



Press button on the steering wheel.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.



The current speed is adopted as the desired speed and is displayed with the symbol in the instrument cluster.

Cruise control can be used.

### Switch off



Deactivated or interrupted system

With deactivated or interrupted system use your brakes, steering and moves as usual to avoid the chance of an accident. ◀



Press button.

- ▷ If active: press twice.
- ▷ If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

### Interrupting



When active, press the button.

The system is automatically interrupted if:

- ▷ The brakes are applied.
- ▷ The clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- ▷ The gear engaged is too high for the current speed.



- ▷ Selector lever position N is set.
- ▷ DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ DSC is actively controlling stability.

## Maintaining, storing, and changing the speed

### Hints



Adjusting the desired speed



Modify desired speed to road conditions and be ready to brake at all times; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀

### Maintaining/storing the speed



Press button.

Or



 or  button: press while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.





This is displayed in the instrument cluster.

When cruise control is maintained or stored, DSC Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on if needed.



### Changing the speed

 or  button: press repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷  or  button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷  or  button: each time it is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.

- ▷  or  button: pressing it to the resistance point and holding it there accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator pedal. After the button is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

### Resuming the desired speed



Press button.

The stored speed is reached and maintained.

### Displays in the instrument cluster

#### Indicator lamp



Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

#### Desired speed



The desired speed is displayed together with the symbol.

- ▷ The indicator lights up green: the system is active.
- ▷ The indicator lights up orange: the system has been interrupted.
- ▷ No display: system is switched off.

#### Brief status display



Selected desired speed.

If --- appears briefly on the display for Check Control messages, it is possible that the system requirements are currently not ready for operations.

## PDC PARK DISTANCE CONTROL

### The concept

PDC supports you when parking. When you slowly approach an object with the rear of your car or with your front - depending on optional features - a signal tone is sounded:

### General information


Ultrasound sensors in the bumpers measure the distances from objects.

The maneuvering range, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.


An acoustic warning is first given:

- ▷ By the front middle sensors and the two corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm.
- ▷ By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

### Hints

 Check the traffic situation as well  
PDC cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation. Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside of the PDC detection range.

Loud noises from outside and inside the vehicle may prevent you from hearing the PDC's signal tone. ◀

 Avoid driving fast with PDC  
Avoid approaching an object too fast.  
Avoid driving off fast while PDC is not yet active.

For technical reasons, the system may otherwise be too late in issuing a warning. ◀

### At a glance

### Button in the vehicle



 PDC Park Distance Control

### Switching on/off

#### Switching on automatically

PDC switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
- ▷ If, with the appropriate equipment, obstacles are detected behind or in front of the vehicle by PDC and the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h.

You may turn off automatic activation via the radio:

1.  Press button.
2.  "Settings"
3. "Parking"
4. "Auto PDC"
5. Select setting.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

#### Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

## Switching on/off manually



Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

## Display

### Signal tones

When approaching an object, an intermittent sound indicates the position of the object. E. g. if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 in/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

If objects are located both in front of and to the rear of the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The signal tone is switched off, when selector lever position P is engaged on vehicles with Steptronic transmission.

### Volume

The volume of the PDC signal tone can be adjusted similar to the sound and volume settings of the radio.

Settings are stored for the profile currently in use.

## System limits

### Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, e.g. coats.

- ▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, e.g. from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- ▷ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- ▷ With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- ▷ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

### False warnings

PDC may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- ▷ In heavy rain.
- ▷ When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- ▷ When sensors are covered in snow.
- ▷ On rough road surfaces.
- ▷ On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- ▷ In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, e.g., in underground garages.
- ▷ In automatic car washes.
- ▷ Through heavy pollution.
- ▷ Due to other ultrasound sources, e.g., sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

The malfunction is signaled by a continuous tone alternating between the front and rear speakers. As soon as the malfunction due to other ultrasound sources is no longer present, the system is again fully functional.

## Malfunction

A Check Control message, refer to page 60, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

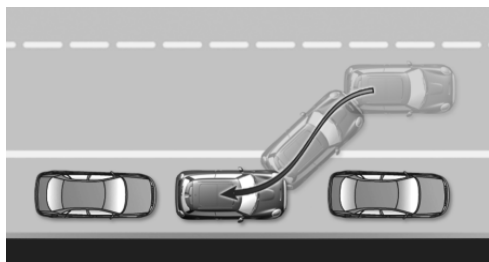
PDC has failed. Have the system checked.

To ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- ▷ dimmedDo not put any stickers on sensors.
- ▷ When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.

## PARKING ASSISTANT

### The concept



This system assists the driver in parking parallel to the road.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of steering during the parking procedure.

When parking, also take note of the visual and acoustic information issued by the PDC and the parking assistant and react accordingly.

A component of the parking assistant is the PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 106.

### Hints



Personal responsibility

Even an active system does not relieve the driver from personal responsibility while driving.

Technically the system has its limits, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations.

Monitor your driving, be on the alert, observe the vehicle surroundings and other traffic and react when needed - risk of accident. ◀



Changes to the parking space

Changes to the parking space after it was measured are not taken into account by the system.

Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀



Transporting cargo

Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the system during the parking procedure.

Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident. ◀



Curbs

The parking assistant may steer the vehicle over or onto curb if need be.

Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, the wheels, tires, or the vehicle may become damaged. ◀

An engine that has been switched off by the Auto Start Stop function is restarted automatically when the parking assistant is activated.

### Requirements

#### For measuring parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.

- ▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

### Suitable parking space

- ▷ Gaps behind an object that has a min. length of 5 ft/1.5 m.
- ▷ Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.
- ▷ Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 3.3 ft/1.0 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.


### Regarding the parking procedure

- ▷ Doors and tailgate closed.
- ▷ Parking brake released.
- ▷ When parking in parking spaces on the driver's side, the corresponding turn signal must be set.

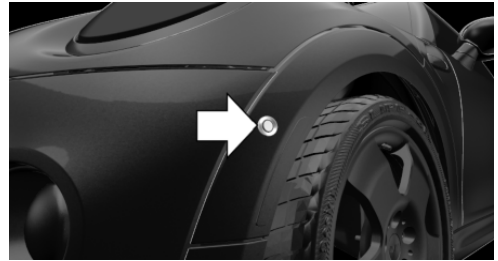
### At a glance

#### Button in the vehicle



 Parking assistant

### Ultrasound sensors



The ultrasound sensors for measuring parking spaces are located on the wheel housing.

To ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- ▷ When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.
- ▷ Do not put stickers over sensors.

### Switching on/off

#### Switching on with the button



Press button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the radio.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

#### Switching on with reverse gear

Shift into reverse.

As soon as a suitable parking space is recognized by the system, the following query is displayed on the radio display: "Start vehicle parking?"

"OK": activate parking assistant.

"Cancel": cancel parking assistant.

#### Switch off


The system can be deactivated as follows:

▷  Press button.


▷ Switch off the ignition.

## Indicator of the radio display

### System status

▷  Symbols, see arrows, on the side of the vehicle illustrated. Parking assistant is activated and search for parking space active.

▷ Suitable parking spaces are displayed next to the vehicle symbol at the edge of the road as on the display.

▷  The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been taken over by system.

▷ Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated.

### Parking using the parking assistant

 Check the traffic situation as well

Loud noises outside and inside the vehicle can drown out the parking assistant's and PDC's signals.

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes; otherwise, there is a danger of an accident. ◀

1. Switch on the parking assistant and activate it if needed.

The status of the parking space search is indicated on the display.

2. Follow the instructions on the display.


The best possible parking position will come after gear change on the stationary vehicle - wait for the automatic steering wheel move.

The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the display.

3. Adjust the parking position yourself if needed.

### Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

▷  Press button.

### Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver grasps the steering wheel or if he takes over steering.
- ▷ If a gear is selected that does not match the instruction on the display.
- ▷ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.
- ▷ Possible on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- ▷ If a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- ▷ If the Park Distance Control PDC displays clearances that are too small.
- ▷ When switching into other functions of the radio.

A Check Control message is displayed.

### Resume

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued if needed.

To do this, follow the instructions on the display.

### System limits

#### No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.

### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery ground.
- ▷ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- ▷ With a mounted emergency wheel.

### Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, e.g. coats.
- ▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, e.g. from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- ▷ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- ▷ With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- ▷ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

The parking assistant may identify parking spaces that are not suitable for parking.

### Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked.

# CLIMATE CONTROL

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## AIR CONDITIONER



- |   |  |   |                                       |
|---|--|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1 | Vent settings                          | 6 | Recirculated-air mode                 |
| 2 | Air flow                               | 7 | Rear window defroster                 |
| 3 | Temperature                            | 8 | Windshield defroster                  |
| 4 | Seat heating, right <a href="#">37</a> | 9 | Seat heating, left <a href="#">37</a> |
| 5 | Cooling function                       |   |                                       |



**Note****Sufficient ventilation**

When remaining in the vehicle for an extended period of time, ensure sufficient external ventilation. Do not continuously use recirculated-air mode; otherwise the air quality in the interior continuously deteriorates and window condensation increases. ◀

**Climate control functions in detail****Manual air distribution**

Turn the wheel to select the desired program or the desired intermediate setting.

- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and footwell.

**Defrosts windows and removes condensation**

Direct the air distribution toward windows, increase the air flow and temperature, and, if needed, use the cooling function.

**Air flow, manual**

Turn the ring to set the desired air volume.

The higher the rate, the more effective the heating or cooling will be.

The air flow from the air conditioner may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

**Temperature**

Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

**Cooling function**

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.



Press button.

The air will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The air conditioner produces condensation water, refer to page 136, that will exit from below the car.

**Recirculated-air mode**

You may respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.



Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air flow, if needed.

**Sufficient ventilation**

When remaining in the vehicle for an extended period of time, ensure sufficient external ventilation. Do not continuously use recirculated-air mode; otherwise the air quality in the interior continuously deteriorates and window condensation increases. ◀

**Rear window defroster**

Press button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

When Green mode, refer to page 142, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

**Windshield defroster**

Press button.

The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

**Switching the system on/off****Switch off**

Turn wheel for air quantity to the left until the control switches off.

**Switching on**

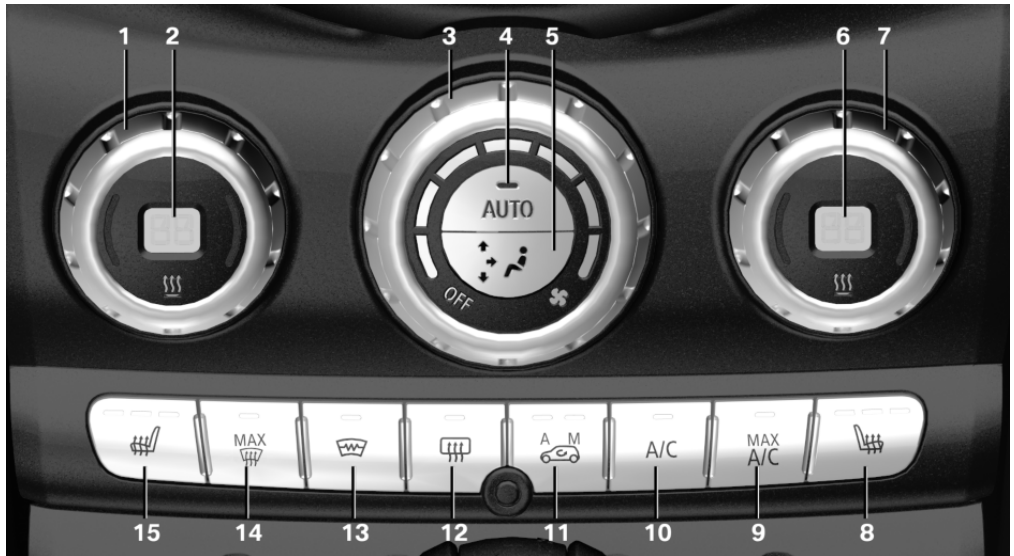
Set any air volume.

**Microfilter**

In external and recirculated air mode the microfilter filters dust and pollen from the air.


This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 197, of your vehicle.

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



- |   |  |    |  |
|---|--|----|--|
| 1 | Temperature, left                      | 10 | Cooling function   |
| 2 | Display                                | 11 | Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode |
| 3 | Air flow, AUTO intensity               | 12 | Rear window defroster                                    |
| 4 | AUTO program                           | 13 | Windshield defroster                                     |
| 5 | Air distribution, manual               | 14 | Defrosts windows and removes condensation                |
| 6 | Display                                | 15 | Seat heating, left <a href="#">37</a>                    |
| 7 | Temperature, right                     |    |  |
| 8 | Seat heating, right <a href="#">37</a> |    |  |
| 9 | Maximum cooling                        |    |  |

### Note

 Sufficient ventilation

When remaining in the vehicle for an extended period of time, ensure sufficient external ventilation. Do not continuously use recirculated-air mode; otherwise the air quality in the interior continuously deteriorates and window condensation increases. ◀

### Climate control functions in detail

#### Temperature



Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control reaches this temperature as quickly as possible, if needed

by increasing the cooling or heating output, and then keeps it constant.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

### Air flow, manual

To manually adjust air flow turn off AUTO program first.



Turn the ring to set the desired air volume.

Automatic climate control displays the selected amount of air flow.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

### AUTO program



Press button.

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, refer to page 116, and the automatic recirculation control, refer to page 117, are automatically also switched on in the AUTO program.

To switch off the program: press the button again or manually adjust the air distribution.

### Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed.



Turn the ring to set the desired intensity.

The selected intensity is displayed on the automatic climate control.

### Manual air distribution



Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Upper body region and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and footwell.
- ▷ Windows and upper body region.
- ▷ Windows.

### Maximum cooling



Press button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and air circulation mode.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

The function is available with external temperatures beyond approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the engine running.

Adjust air flow with the program active.

### Cooling function

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.



Press button.

The air will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 136, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

### Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

You may respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.



Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off automatically.
- ▷ Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

If windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculating mode and press the AUTO button. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.



**Sufficient ventilation**

When remaining in the vehicle for an extended period of time, ensure sufficient external ventilation. Do not continuously use recirculated-air mode; otherwise the air quality in the interior continuously deteriorates and window condensation increases. ◀

### Rear window defroster



Press button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

When Green mode, refer to page 142, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

### Windshield defroster



Press button.

The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

### Defrosts windows and removes condensation



Press button.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Adjust air flow with the program active.

If the windows fog over, also switch on the cooling function or press the AUTO button.

### Switching the system on/off

#### Switch off



Turn wheel for air quantity to the left until the control switches off.

#### Switching on

Set any air volume.

### Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

In external and recirculated air mode the microfilter/activated charcoal filter filters dust, pollen, and gaseous pollutants out of the air.

This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 197, of your vehicle.

## VENTILATION



- ▷ Turn knob for continuous opening and closing of the vents.
- ▷ Swivel the vents to alter the direction of the vent flow, arrow.

### Adjusting the ventilation

- ▷ Ventilation for cooling:  
Direct vent in your direction when vehicle's interior is too hot.
- ▷ Draft-free ventilation:  
Adjust the vent to let the air flow past you.
- ▷ Indirect ventilation:  
If the vents are fully or partly closed, the air is directly routed into the car's interior.

# INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## UNIVERSAL INTEGRATED REMOTE CONTROL

### The concept

The Universal Integrated Remote Control can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives or lighting systems. The Universal Integrated Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior rearview mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.



During programming

During programming and before activating a device using the universal garage door opener, ensure that there are no people, animals or objects in the area of the remote-controlled device; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage.

Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter. ◀

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

### Compatibility



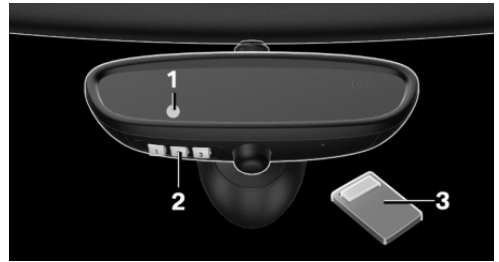
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the instructions of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the Universal Integrated Remote Control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- ▷ Your service center.
- ▷ [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

### At a glance



- 1 LED
- 2 Programmable keys
- 3 Hand-held transmitters of the system

### Programming

#### General information

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:

Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior rearview mirror flashes. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior rearview mirror.

3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.
4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior rearview mirror. The LED on the interior rearview mirror will begin flashing slowly.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed. If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior rearview mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.  
Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior rearview mirror buttons.

### Special feature of the alternating-code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features an alternating-code system.

Read the system's operating manual, or press the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror longer. If the LED on the interior rearview mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features an alternating-code system. Flashing

and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with an alternating-code system, the Universal Integrated Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the operating manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

To synchronize:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior rearview mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

### Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the interior rearview mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior rearview mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.
4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior rearview mirror LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the



button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed. The system can then be controlled by the button on the interior rearview mirror.

If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

## Controls



Before operation

Before operating a system using the universal garage door opener, ensure that there are no people, animals, or objects within the range of movement of the remote-controlled system; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage.

Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter. ◀

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior rearview mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior rearview mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

## Deleting stored functions

Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED flashes rapidly. All stored functions are deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

## DIGITAL COMPASS

### Overview



- 1 Control button
- 2 Mirror display

### Mirror display

The point of the compass is displayed in the mirror when driving straight.

### Operating concept

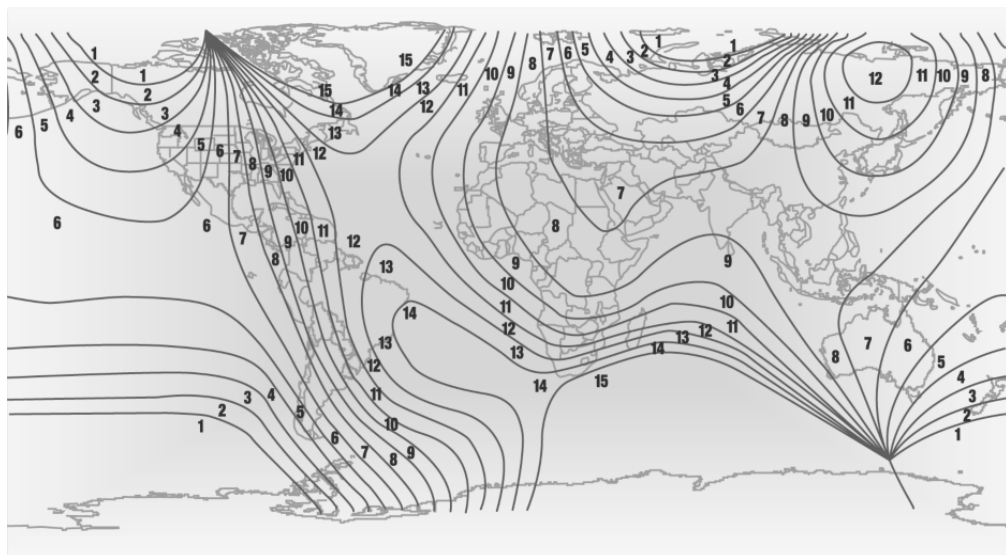
Various functions can be called up by pressing the control button with a pointed object, such as the tip of a ballpoint pen or similar object. The following setting options are displayed in succession, depending on how long the control button is pressed:

- ▷ Pressed briefly: turns display on/off.
- ▷ 3 to 6 seconds: compass zone setting.
- ▷ 6 to 9 seconds: compass calibration.
- ▷ 9 to 12 seconds: left/right-hand steering setting.
- ▷ 12 to 15 seconds: language setting.

### Setting the compass zones

Sets the particular compass zones on the vehicle so that the compass operates correctly; refer to World map with compass zones.

## World map with magnetic zones



### Procedure

1. Press and hold the control button for approx. 3 to 4 seconds. The number of the set compass zone appears in the mirror.
2. To change the zone setting, press the control button quickly and repeatedly until the number of the compass zone that corresponds with your location appears in the mirror.

The set zone is stored automatically. The compass is ready for use again after approximately 10 seconds.

### Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the event of the following:

- ▷ The wrong compass point is displayed.
- ▷ The point of the compass displayed does not change despite changing the direction of travel.
- ▷ Not all points of the compass are displayed.

### Procedure

1. Make sure that there are no large metallic objects or overhead power lines near the vehicle and that there is sufficient room to drive around in a circle.
2. Set the currently applicable compass zone.
3. Press and hold the control button for approx. 6 to 7 seconds so that "C" appears on the display. Next, drive in a complete circle at least once at a speed of no more than 4 mph/7 km/h. If calibration is successful, the "C" is replaced by the points of the compass.

### Left/right-hand steering

The digital compass is already set for right or left-hand steering at the factory.

### Setting the language

Press and hold the control button for approx. 12 to 13 seconds. Briefly press the control button again to switch between English "E" and German "O".

Settings are stored automatically after approximately 10 seconds.

## SUN VISOR

### Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

### Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

## ASHTRAY/CIGARETTE LIGHTER

### At a glance




The ashtray is located in one of the frontal cup holders, the cigarette lighter above it in the center console.

### Ashtray

In order to empty the ashtray, remove the ashtray from the cupholder.

### Lighter

 **Danger of burns**  
Only hold the hot lighter by its knob; otherwise, there is a danger of getting burned.

Switch off the ignition and take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children cannot use the lighter and burn themselves. ◀



Replace the cover after use

Reinsert the lighter or socket cover after use, otherwise objects may get into the lighter socket or fixture and cause a short circuit. ◀



Push in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

## CONNECTING ELECTRICAL DEVICES

### Hints



Do not connect charging devices to the 12 volt socket in the vehicle

Do not connect battery chargers to the factory-installed 12 volt sockets in the vehicle as this may damage the vehicle battery due to an increased power consumption. ◀



Replace the cover after use

Reinsert the lighter or socket cover after use, otherwise objects may get into the lighter socket or fixture and cause a short circuit. ◀



Keep the airbag unfolding area clear

Make sure that the devices and cable are located outside of the airbag's unfolding area; otherwise, its unfolding can be hampered or objects can be hurled through the interior when the airbag unfolds. ◀

### Sockets

Sockets can be used for the running electrical devices with the engine running or with the ig-

nition switched on. The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

### In the center console



Remove the cover or cigarette lighter.

### In the cargo area



The socket is located on the right side in the cargo area.

## USB INTERFACE

### The concept

Connection for USB devices with music files.

### Hints

Observe the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lights to the USB interface.

- ▷ Do not connect any USB hard drives or USB hubs.
- ▷ Do not use the USB interface for recharging external devices.

### At a glance



The USB interface is located in the front of the center console.

## CARGO AREA

### Cargo cover

#### General information

When the tailgate is opened, the cargo cover is raised.

#### Note



Do not deposit heavy objects

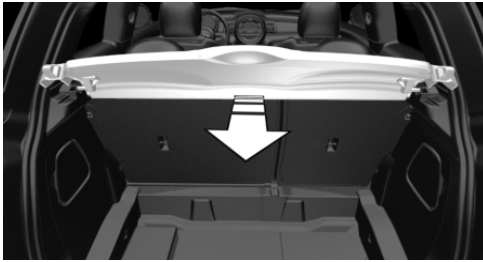
Do not deposit heavy or hard objects on the cargo cover. Otherwise, they may pose a risk to occupants, such as during braking and evasive maneuvers. ◀

### Removing

For storing bulky objects the cargo cover can be removed.

1. Detach the left and right retaining straps at the tailgate.

2. Pull the cargo cover out of the brackets on the left and right.



### Installation

1. Slide the cover forward horizontally into the two side brackets until it audibly latches.
2. Attach the left and right retaining straps at the tailgate.


### Enlarging the trunk


#### General information

The trunk can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrest.


The rear seat backrest is divided into two parts at a ratio of 60 to 40. The backrest of the left seat is connected to the backrest center section.


#### Hints

 **Danger of jamming**  
Before folding down the rear seat backrests, ensure that the area of movement of the backrests is clear. Ensure that no one is located in or reaches into the area of movement of the rear seat backrests. Otherwise, injury or damage may result. ◀

 **Ensuring the stability of the child seat**  
When installing child restraint systems, make sure that the child seat is securely fastened to the backrest of the seat. Angle and headrest of the backrest might need to be adjusted or possibly be removed. Make sure that all backrests are securely locked. Otherwise the

stability of the child seat can be affected, and there is an increased risk of injury because of unexpected movement of the seat backrest. ◀

 **Using the middle safety belt**  
If the middle safety belt in the rear is used, the larger side of the backrest must be locked. Otherwise, the safety belt will not have a restraining effect. ◀

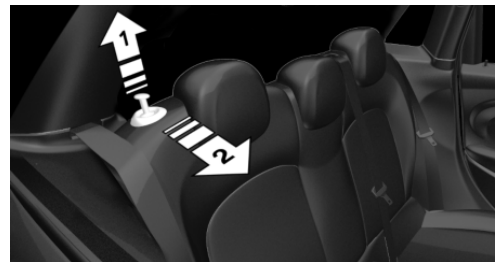
 **Push the headrests down, before the backrests are folded down**

Before folding down the rear seat backrests, make sure that the corresponding headrest is pushed all the way down; otherwise, damage may result. ◀

### Folding down rear seat backrest


The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the front or from the trunk.

Before the backrest is folded down, hook the corresponding safety belt into the safety belt on the side.



Pull the release upward and fold the backrest toward the front.

### Folding back the backrest

 **Ensure that the lock is securely engaged**  
When you fold back the backrest make sure that it locks in place. When this happens the red warning field on the seat disappears. Otherwise transported cargo could shoot into the car's interior during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger occupants. ◀

Fold up the backrest and press it into the latch. Make sure that the safety belt is not pinched.

### Adjusting the backrest tilt



Do not install any child restraint systems. When the backrests are set at steeper position, do not install any child restraint systems on the backrest; otherwise, their protective effect may be impaired. ◀

To transport bulky items, the trunk can be expanded by setting the backrests at a steeper angle.

1. Released the back rest, and tilt it forward.
2. Fold the frame, arrow, up until it latches.



3. Fold back and latch the backrest.

# STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## HINTS



No loose objects in the car's interior

Do not stow any objects in the car's interior without securing them; otherwise, they may present a danger to occupants e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers. ◀



Do not place anti-slip mats on the dashboard

Do not place anti-slip mats on the dashboard. The mat materials could damage the dashboard. ◀

## OVERVIEW

The following storage compartments are available in the vehicle interior:

- ▷ Storage compartment in front of the cupholders.
- ▷ Storage tray in the center console.
- ▷ Glove compartment on the front passenger side.
- ▷ Storage compartment above the glove compartment.

- ▷ Storage compartment in the center armrest.
- ▷ Compartments in the doors.
- ▷ Pockets on the backrests of the front seats.

## GLOVE COMPARTMENT

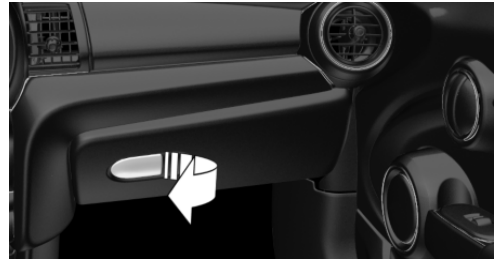
### Note



Close the glove compartment again immediately

Close the glove compartment immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents. ◀

### Opening



Pull the handle.


The light in the glove compartment switches on.

### Closing

Fold up the cover.

## STORAGE COMPARTMENT ABOVE THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT

### Note

 Immediately close the storage compartment

Close the storage compartment immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents. ◀

### Opening




Press the lower edge of the cover.

### Closing

Push the cover back into the original position.

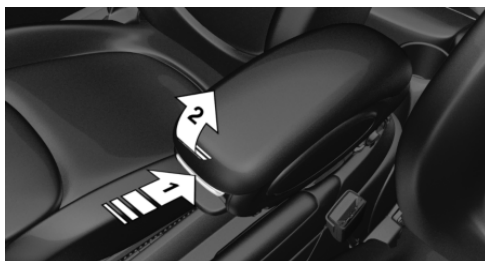
## COMPARTMENTS IN THE DOORS

 Do not stow any breakable objects  
Do not store any breakable objects, e. g. glass bottles, in the compartments, or there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. ◀

## CENTER ARMREST

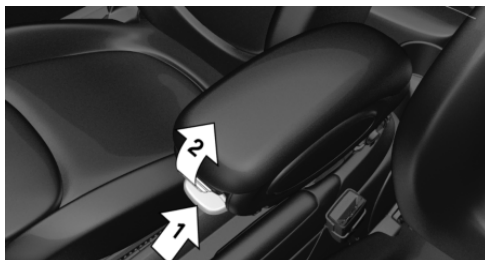
The center armrest contains a storage compartment.

### Opening



Press button, arrow 1, and open center arm rest upward, arrow 2.


### Adjusting the height




Press button, arrow 1, and swing center arm rest upward or downward into the desired height, arrow 2.

## CUPHOLDERS

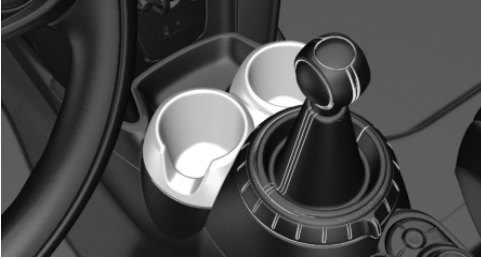
### Hints

 Shatter-proof containers and no hot drinks

Use light and shatter-proof containers and do not transport hot drinks. Otherwise, there is the increased danger of injury in an accident. ◀

 Unsuitable containers  
Do not forcefully push unsuitable containers into the cupholders. This may result in damage. ◀



**Front**

In the center console.

**Rear**

On 3-door models: in front of the rear seats and in the and in the side armrests.



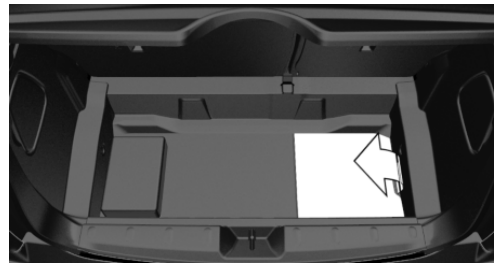
On 5-door models: in front of the rear seats.



No heavy objects

Do not hang heavy objects from the hooks; otherwise, they may present a danger to passengers during braking and evasive maneuvers. ◀

The clothes hooks are located above the side windows in the rear.

**STORAGE SPACE UNDER CARGO FLOOR PANEL**

Located under the cargo floor panel on the right side is a trough for the onboard vehicle tool kit.

To remove the onboard vehicle tool kit, fold the right side of the cargo floor panel upward.

**VARIABLE TRUNK FLOOR**

With the variable trunk floor, the trunk can be configured corresponding to transport requirements. To do this, remove the trunk floor, and insert it in the desired position.

Follow instructions on securing cargo, refer to page 137.

**CLOTHES HOOKS**

Do not obstruct view

When suspending clothing from the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's view. ◀

## Removing the cargo floor panel



On 5-door models: To change the position of the cargo floor panel, first fold up the rear part of the cargo floor panel.



Grasp the cargo floor panel in the rear and fold slightly upward. Next, pull it backward from the supports.

The cargo floor panel can be removed from the trunk above the tail lamps.

## Lower position



- ▷ Larger objects can be transported.
- ▷ Space for smaller objects remains between the fixed and variable trunk floor.

## Folded up position



The variable cargo floor panel may not be used as a partition net to separate the trunk and the vehicle interior.

- ▷ Only use the variable cargo floor in the folded-up position when the backrests are folded up and locked.
- ▷ Always secure cargo against shifting, using straps, belts and lashing eyes, e.g.

If you don't follow these precautions you can endanger vehicle's occupants and damage the cargo floor during braking. ◀



Fold up the cargo floor panel in the lower position and push it behind the locks on the left and right, arrow. You've reached the maximum cargo height.

## Upper position



- ▷ With the backrests folded down, a long, flat loading surface is produced.
- ▷ On 3-door models:  
Maximum load in this position:  
330 lbs/150 kg.

- ▶ On 5-door models:  
Maximum load in this position:  
441 lbs/200 kg.
- ▶ Space for objects remains between the  
fixed and variable trunk floor.



**DRIVE ME.**

**AT A GLANCE**

**CONTROLS**

**DRIVING TIPS**

**ENTERTAINMENT**

**COMMUNICATION**

**MOBILITY**

**REFERENCE**

# THINGS TO REMEMBER WHEN DRIVING

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## BREAKING-IN PERIOD

### General information

Moving parts need time to adjust to one another (break-in time).

The following instructions will help accomplish a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control, refer to page 58.

### Engine, transmission, and axle drive

#### Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- ▷ For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

#### From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

### Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

### Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimal performance between brake discs and brake pads. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

### Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

### Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components above-mentioned have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

## GENERAL DRIVING NOTES

### Closing the tailgate



Drive with the tailgate closed

Only drive with the tailgate closed; otherwise, in the event of an accident or braking and evasive maneuvers, passengers and other traffic may be injured, and the vehicle may be damaged. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. ◀

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- ▶ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▶ Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- ▶ Drive moderately.

### Hot exhaust system



#### Hot exhaust system

High temperatures are generated in the exhaust system.

Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that flammable materials, e. g. hay, leaves, grass, etc. do not come in contact with the hot exhaust system while driving, while in idle position mode, or when parked. Such contact could lead to a fire, resulting in an increased risk of serious personal injury as well as property damage.

Do not touch hot exhaust pipes; otherwise, there is a danger of getting burned. ◀

### Mobile communication devices in the vehicle



#### Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

It is not recommended to use mobile phones, such as mobile phones, in the vehicle interior without a direct connection to an external aerial. Otherwise, the vehicle's electronics and mobile communication devices can interfere with each other. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation generated during transmission will be conducted away from the vehicle interior. ◀

### Hydroplaning



#### Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce your speed to prevent hydroplaning. ◀

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete

loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

### Driving through water



#### Observe water level and speed

Do not exceed the maximum water level and maximum speed; otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged. ◀

Drive through calm water only if it is not deeper than 9.8 inches/25 cm and at this height, no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

### Braking safely

Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations needed.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

### Objects in the area around the pedals



#### No objects in the area around the pedals

Keep floor mats, carpets, and any other objects out of the pedal area; otherwise, the function of the pedals could be impeded while driving and create the risk of an accident.

Do not place additional floor mats over existing mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be properly attached to floor.

Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed for cleaning, e.g. ◀

## Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or in heavy rain, press brake pedal ever so gently every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated in this process helps dry the brake discs and pads.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

## Hills



Avoid stressing the brakes

Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system. Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. ◀



Do not drive in neutral

Do not drive in neutral or with the engine stopped, as doing so disables engine braking. In addition, steering and brake assist are unavailable with the engine stopped. ◀

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking efforts. Otherwise the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

## Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are furthered by:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.

Corrosion will built up when the maximum pressure applied to the brake pads during braking is not reached - thus discs don't get cleaned.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally that cannot be corrected.

## Condensation under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops collecting underneath the vehicle.

These traces of water under the vehicle are normal.

## Ground clearance



Limited ground clearance

Observe the limited ground clearance of the vehicle, e. g. while entering underground parking garages or when driving over obstacles. Otherwise, damages to the vehicle may result. ◀



# LOADING

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## HINTS



**Overloading the vehicle**

To avoid exceeding the approved capacity of the tires, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. This could result in a sudden loss of tire inflation pressure. ◀



**No fluids in the cargo area**

Make sure that fluids do not leak into the cargo area; otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged. ◀



**Heavy and hard objects**

Do not stow any heavy and hard objects in the car's interior without securing them; otherwise, they may present a danger to occupants, e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers. ◀

## DETERMINING THE LOAD LIMIT

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard:
  - ▷ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and unstable driving situations may result.

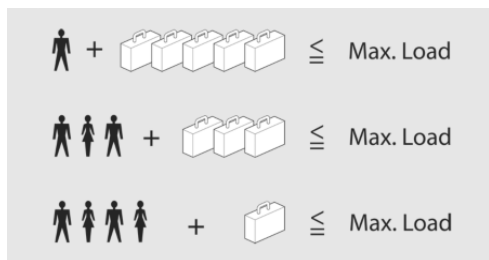


2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.
 

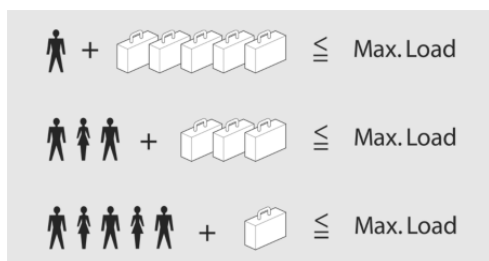
For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,000 lbs and there will be four 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 400 lbs: 1,000 lbs minus 600 lbs = 400 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

## LOAD

On 3-door models



On 5-door models



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

## STOWING CARGO

- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- ▷ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow cargo.
- ▷ Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.

## SECURING CARGO

### Lashing eyes in the cargo area



Without storage compartment package: to secure the cargo there are two lashing eyes, arrow 1, in the cargo area.

With storage compartment package: to secure the cargo there are six lashing eyes, arrows 1 and 2, in the cargo area.

### Securing cargo



#### Securing cargo

Stow and secure the cargo as described; otherwise it may present a danger to the occupants, e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers. ◀

- ▷ Smaller and lighter items: secure with retaining straps or with draw straps.
- ▷ Larger and heavy objects: secure with cargo straps.

Attach the cargo straps, retaining straps or draw straps to the lashing eyes in the trunk.

## ROOF-MOUNTED LUGGAGE RACK

### Note

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

## Securing

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

## Loading

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- ▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, e.g., tie with ratchet straps.
- ▷ Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

## REAR LUGGAGE RACK

### General information

Installation only possible with rear luggage rack preparation.

Rear racks are available as special accessories.

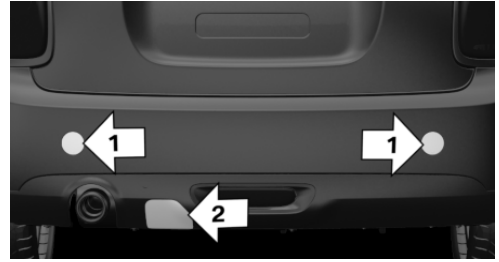
### Note

Follow the installation instructions of the rear luggage rack.

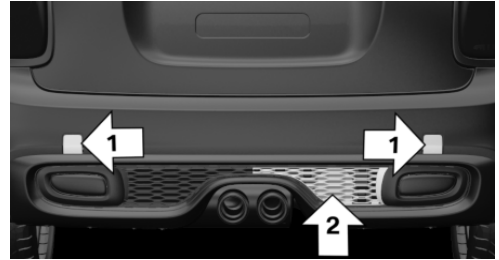
Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

## Securing

### COOPER/COOPER D/ONE/ONE D



### COOPER S/COOPER SD



The anchorage points, arrow 1, and the socket, arrow 2, are located below the covers in the bumper.

Remove the covers before installing the rear luggage rack.

## Power consumption



Function of tail lights

Before driving off, check that the tail lights of the rear luggage rack are functioning properly; otherwise, there is a risk of endangering other traffic. ◀

The rear luggage rack lights must not consume more than:

- ▷ Turn signals: 42 watts per side.
- ▷ Rear lights: 50 watts per side.
- ▷ Brake lights: 84 watts in total.
- ▷ Rear fog lights: 42 watts in total.

- ▷ Backup lamp: 42 watts in total.

# SAVING FUEL

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular maintenance can influence fuel consumption and environmental impact.

## REMOVE UNNECESSARY CARGO

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

## REMOVE ATTACHED PARTS FOLLOWING USE

Remove roof or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

## CLOSE THE WINDOWS AND GLASS SUNROOF

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

## TIRES

### General information

Tires can affect fuel consumption in various ways, e.g., tire size may influence fuel consumption.

### Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

## DRIVE AWAY WITHOUT DELAY

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

## LOOK WELL AHEAD WHEN DRIVING

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

## AVOID HIGH ENGINE SPEEDS

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Use 1st gear to get the vehicle moving. Starting with the 2nd gear, accelerate rapidly. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with the engine speed as low as possible and at a constant speed.

The gear shift indicator, refer to page 65, of your vehicle indicates the most fuel efficient gear.

## USE COASTING CONDITIONS

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

## SWITCH OFF THE ENGINE DURING LONGER STOPS

Switch off the engine during longer stops, e.g., at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

### Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of your vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

## SWITCH OFF ANY FUNCTIONS THAT ARE NOT CURRENTLY NEEDED

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Therefore, reel off these functions if they are not actually needed.

## HAVE MAINTENANCE CARRIED OUT

Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and operating life. Have the maintenance carried out by your service center.

Please also note the MINI Maintenance System, refer to page 197.

## GREEN MODE

### The concept

The GREEN mode supports a driving style that saves on fuel consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, e. g. the climate control output, are adjusted.

For Steptronic transmission:

The Coasting driving condition is enabled under certain conditions.

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in selector lever position D. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged. An indicator provides information about the distance traveled in Coasting mode.

In addition, context-sensitive instructions are displayed to assist with an optimized fuel consumption driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### At a glance

The system includes the following MINIMAL functions and displays:

- ▷ GREEN bonus range, refer to page 143.
- ▷ GREEN tips driving instruction, refer to page 144.
- ▷ GREEN climate control, refer to page 143.
- ▷ Coasting driving condition, refer to page 144.

### Activating GREEN mode



Turn Driving Dynamics Control to the right until GREEN mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Configuring GREEN mode

#### Via radio

1. "Settings"
2. Select between "Driving mode" or "GREEN Mode"

Configure the program.

### GREEN tip

"GREEN speed warning":

Displays a reminder when the set GREEN mode speed is exceeded.

### GREEN climate control

"GREEN climate control" :

Climate control is set to be fuel-efficient.

By making a slight change to the set temperature, or adjusting the rate of heating or cooling of the car's interior fuel consumption can be economized.

The outputs of the seat heater and the exterior. Additionally heat output to seats and exterior mirror is reduced.

Exterior mirror heat is available when outside temperatures are very low.

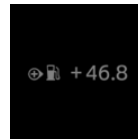
### Coasting

Fuel-efficiency can be optimized by disengaging the engine and Coasting, refer to page 144, with the engine idling.

This function is only available in GREEN mode.

### Display in the instrument cluster

#### GREEN bonus range



An adjusted driving style helps you extend your driving range.

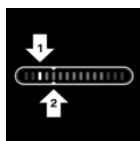
This may be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

The bonus range is shown in the range display.

The bonus range is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

- ▷ Green display: efficient driving style.
- ▷ Gray display: adjust driving style, e. g. by backing off the accelerator pedal.

## Driving style



A bar display in the instrument cluster indicates your current driving efficiency.

Mark in the left area, arrow 1: display for energy recovered by coasting or when braking.

Mark in the right area, arrow 2: display when accelerating.

Your driving style's efficiency is shown by the bar's color:

- ▷ Green display: efficient driving style as long as the mark moves within the green range.
- ▷ Gray display: adjust driving style, e. g. by backing off the accelerator pedal.

The display switches to green as soon as all conditions for fuel-efficiency-optimized driving are met.

## GREEN tip driving instruction



Instructions tell you to reel to a more fuel-efficient driving style when you back off the accelerator.

### Note

The driving style display and GREEN mode tips in the instrument cluster appear when the GREEN mode display is activated.

Activating driving style and GREEN mode tips:

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "GREEN Info"

## GREEN tip symbols

An additional symbol and text instructions are displayed.

Symbol	Measure
	For efficient driving back off the accelerator or delay accelerating to allow time to assess road conditions.
	Reduce speed to the selected GREEN speed.
	Steptronic transmission: reel from S/M to D or avoid manual shift interventions.
	Manual transmission: follow shifting instructions.
	Manual transmission: engage neutral for engine stop.

## Coasting

### The concept

The system helps to conserve fuel.

To do this, under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission when selector lever position D is set. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This driving condition is referred to as coasting.

As soon as the brake or accelerator pedal is depressed, the engine is automatically coupled to the transmission again.

### Hints

Coasting is a component of the GREEN driving mode, refer to page 142.

Coasting is automatically activated when GREEN mode is called via the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 96.



The function is available in a certain speed range.

A proactively driving style helps the driver to use the function as often as possible and supports the fuel-conserving effect of coasting.

### Safety mode

The function is not available under one of the following conditions.

- ▷ DSC OFF or TRACTION activated.
- ▷ Driving in the dynamic limit range and on steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▷ Battery charge status temporarily too low or vehicle electrical system drawing excessive current.
- ▷ Cruise control activated.

### Functional requirements

In GREEN mode, this function is available in a speed range from approximately 30 mph, approx. 50 km/h to 100 mph, approx. 160 km/h, if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not operated.
- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.

## Display

### Display in the instrument cluster



The mark in the bar display below the tachometer is highlighted green and appears at the zero point. The tachometer approximately indicates idle speed.

## Deactivating the system manually

The function can be deactivated via the radio, e.g., to use the braking effect of the engine when traveling downhill.

1. ⚙️ "Settings"
2. Select between "Driving mode" or "GREEN Mode"
3. "Coasting"

Settings are saved for the profile currently being used.



**ROCK ME.**

**AT A GLANCE**

**CONTROLS**

**DRIVING TIPS**

**ENTERTAINMENT**

**COMMUNICATION**

**MOBILITY**

**REFERENCE**

# TONE

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## GENERAL INFORMATION




Settings are stored for the profile, refer to page 23, currently in use.

## TREBLE, BASS, BALANCE, AND FADER

### General information

- ▷ "Treble": treble adjustment.
- ▷ "Bass": depth adjustment.
- ▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution.
- ▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution.

### Adjusting treble, bass, balance, and fader

1.  "Settings",  "Radio" or  "Media"
2. "Tone"
3. Select the desired tone settings.
4. Set the desired value.

## VOLUME




### General information

- ▷ "Speed volume": speed-dependent volume control.
- ▷ "PDC": volume of the PDC signal compared to the entertainment sound output.
- ▷ "Gong": volume of the signal, such as the safety belt reminder, compared to the entertainment sound output.
- ▷ "Microphone": volume of the microphone during a phone call.
- ▷ "Loudspeak.": volume of the loudspeakers during a phone call.




The following volumes are only stored for the respective paired telephone:

"Microphone", "Loudspeak."

### Adjusting

1.  "Settings",  "Radio" or  "Media"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired volume setting.
5. Set the desired value.

## RESETTING THE TONE SETTINGS

1.  "Settings",  "Radio" or  "Media"
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

# RADIO

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Settings are stored for the profile, refer to page 23, currently in use.

## OVERVIEW



- 1 Change waveband
- 2 Opening the main menu
- 3 Menu level back
- 4 Selecting menu items
  - ▷ Turn: highlight the menu item in the display or adjust the value.
  - ▷ Press: select the highlighted menu item or store the setting.
- 5 Open the options for the respective menu

- 6 Programmable memory buttons
- 7 "Media": open the menu
- 8 "Radio": open the menu
- 9 Changing the station

## SOUND OUTPUT

### Switching on/off



If the ignition is switched off: press the left button.

### Muting



If the ignition is switched on or the engine is running: press the left button.

## AM/FM STATION

### General information


A list of the currently received stations can be set up and updated for each of the FM and AM wavebands.

Symbol	Meaning
✓	Station is played.
	Station is saved.
	Station can be saved.


### Update the list of receivable stations

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Update list"

## Selecting a station

1.  "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select a station.

## Selecting a station manually

1.  "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Manual search ( )"
4. Turn the right-hand knob until the desired frequency is displayed.

## Changing the station

About the radio:

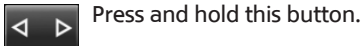


Via the buttons on the steering wheel:

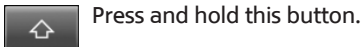


The next station with reception or stored station is played. If traffic bulletins are activated, the next traffic information station is played.

About the radio:




Via the buttons on the steering wheel:



The waveband is traversed. After the button is released, the next station with reception is played.

## Storing a station


1.  "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select a station.

4. Press the right button.
5. Select the memory location.

The stations can also be stored on the Favorites buttons, refer to page 152.



## Renaming a station

When storing a station with RDS signal, the RDS information transferred during storing is accepted as the station name. This name can be changed.

1. Select the station that is to be renamed.
2.  Press button.
3. "Rename to:"  
If necessary, wait until the desired name appears.
4. Press the right-hand knob to store this name.

## Displaying additional information

If a radio station broadcasts radio text or radio text plus, this information can be displayed, e.g., the track or the performer of the music. Availability, content and sequence are set by the radio station.

1.  "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3.  Press button.
4. "Station info"

## RDS Radio Data System



### The concept

RDS broadcasts additional information, such as the station name, in the FM wave band.

When playing a station with multiple frequencies, the system automatically switches to the frequency with the best reception, if needed.

## Switching on/off

It is recommended to switch on RDS

1.  "Radio"
2. "FM"
3.  Press button.
4. "RDS"



## HD Radio™ reception


Many stations broadcast both analog and digital signals.

License conditions

HD Radio technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U. S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD, HD Radio, and "Arc" logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

## Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

1.  "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3.  Press button.
4. "HD Radio reception"

 This symbol is displayed in the status line when the audio signal is digital.

When setting a station with a digital signal, it may take a few seconds before the station plays in digital quality.

Information about HD Radio stations whose station name ends with ...HD or with ...HD1:

In areas in which the station is not continuously received in digital mode, the playback switches between analog and digital reception. In this case, switch off digital radio reception.


Information about HD Radio multicast stations whose station name ends with ...HD2, ...HD3, ...:

In areas in which the station is not continuously received in digital mode, there may be inter-

ruptions of the audible signal lasting several seconds. This depends on the reception.

## Displaying additional information

Some stations broadcast additional information on the current track, such as the name of the artist.

1. Select the desired station.
2.  Press button.
3. "Station info"


## STORED STATIONS

### General information

It is possible to store up to 40 stations.


Symbol	Meaning
1 ... 40	Memory location.
FM	Stations out of the FM waveband.
AM	Stations out of the AM waveband.
SAT	Satellite radio station.

### Calling up a station

1.  "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired memory location.

### Storing a station

The station currently selected is stored.

1.  "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. "Store station ( )"
4. Memory location to be selected.

The stations can also be stored on the Favorites buttons, refer to page [152](#).

## Programmable memory buttons

The first eight locations in the station list correspond to the assignment of the Favorites keys.



To store the station:

1. Select a station.
2. Press and hold Favorites button until a signal sounds.



Calling up a station:

1. Press Favorites button.



## Shifting stations

1.  "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the station that is to be moved.
4.  Press button.
5. "Move entry"
6. Select the memory location.

## Deleting a station

1.  "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3.  Press button.
4. "Delete entry"

## Deleting all stations

1.  "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3.  Press button.
4. "Delete presets"
5. Confirm "Are you sure you want to delete all saved stations?".

## SATELLITE RADIO

### General information


The channels are offered in predefined packages. The packages must be subscribed by phone.


### Managing a subscription

To be able to enable or unsubscribe from the channels, you must have reception. This is usually the case when you have an unobstructed view of the sky.

### Enabling channels

The Unsubscribed Channels category contains all disabled channels.

1.  "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select the Unsubscribed category.
4. Select the channel.

5.  Press button.
6. "Manage subscription"



The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

7. Select the displayed phone number to subscribe to the channel.

The serial number, ESN, is needed to subscribe.

You can unsubscribe from the channels again via this phone number.

### Unsubscribing from channels

1.  "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select the channel.
4.  Press button.
5. "Manage subscription"




The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

6. Select the displayed phone number to unsubscribe from the channel.

The serial number, ESN, is needed to unsubscribe.

### Selecting channels

You can only listen to enabled channels.

1.  "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select categories.
4. Select the channel.


The selected channel is stored in the remote control currently in use.

### Changing the channel



Press button.

### Storing a channel

1.  "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select the channel.
4. Press the right button.
5. Select the memory location.

The channels are stored for the remote control currently in use.

The channels can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons.

### Weather & Traffic jump

Traffic and weather information for a selected region is broadcast every few minutes.

### Selecting a region

1.  "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3.  Press button.

4. "Set area:"
5. Select region.

The region is stored in the remote control currently in use.

### Activating/deactivating the jump

Reception must be guaranteed in order to activate or deactivate.

1.  "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3.  Press button.
4. "Weather & Traffic Jump"

Information for the selected region is broadcast as soon as it is available.

### Hints

- ▶ Reception may not be available in some situations, such as under certain environmental or topographic conditions.
- ▶ The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages; next to tall buildings; or near trees, mountains or powerful sources of radio interference.

# MULTIMEDIA

## EXTERNAL DEVICES



### At a glance



- 1 Change waveband
- 2 Opening the main menu
- 3 Menu level back
- 4 Selecting menu items
  - ▶ Turn: highlight the menu item in the display or adjust the value.
  - ▶ Press: select the highlighted menu item or store the setting.
- 5 Open the options for the respective menu
- 6 Programmable memory buttons
- 7 "Media": open the menu
- 8 "Radio": open the menu
- 9 Changing the track

### The concept

Various external devices can be connected to the vehicle. Sound is played back through the vehicle loudspeakers. The system can be operated via the radio, depending on how the external device is connected to the vehicle.

Symbol	Meaning
	AUX-IN port.
	USB audio interface.

## AUX-IN port

### At a glance

For connecting audio devices, e.g., MP3 players. Sound is played back on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Recommendation: use medium tone and volume settings on the audio device. The sound relies on the quality of the audio files.


### Connecting



The AUX-In port is located at the front of the center console.

Connect the headphones or the line-out connector of the device to the AUX-in port.


### Playback

1. Connect the audio device, switch it on and select a track on the audio device.
2.  "Media"
3. "AUX"

### Volume

The volume of the sound output depends on the audio device. If this volume differs markedly from the volume of the other audio sources, we recommend adjusting the volume.

## Adjusting the volume

1.  "Media"
2. "AUX"
3. "Volume"
4. Set the desired volume.

## USB audio interface

### At a glance

It is possible to connect external devices. Set via radio. Sound is played back on the vehicle loudspeakers.

### Connectors for external devices

Connection via USB audio interface: Apple iPod/iPhone, USB devices, e.g., MP3 players, USB flash drives, or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.

Due to the large number of audio devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device/mobile phone is operable on the vehicle.

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, for example bit rates greater than 256 kbit/s or the number of different compression technologies, the files may not play back correctly in each case.

Information about suitable USB devices can be found at [www.miniusa.com/bluetooth](http://www.miniusa.com/bluetooth).

### Audio files

Standard audio files and playlists can be played back.

### File systems

Popular file systems for USB devices are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

## USB device connection



The USB port is located at the front of the center console.

Use a flexible adapter cable for connecting to help protect the USB audio port and the USB device from mechanical damage. The adapter cable supplied with the USB device would be ideal.

### After the first connection

Information about the tracks and directories stored on the USB device is transferred into the vehicle. This may take some time, depending on the USB device, the number of tracks and the folder structure.

### Number of tracks

Information for a maximum of 9999 tracks and directories can be stored in the vehicle.

### Copy protection

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management, DRM, cannot be played.

### Playback

1.  "Media"
2. "USB device"

Playback is started.

### Track search


Music tracks can be searched in three ways.

- ▶ Track from the current playlist.
- ▶ Via playlists stored in the audio device.


- ▶ Via the directory structure in the audio device.

### Current playback

List of tracks that is currently being played. E. g. the list of tracks that was found in the track search or a playlist.

1.  "Media"
2. "USB device"
3. "Current playback"
4. Select the track at which the playback is to begin.


### Searching directories

1.  "Media"
2. "USB device"
3. "Browse directory"

Directories and titles at the top directory level are displayed. Should the USB device support external memory cards, their directories are also displayed.

4. Select the directory.
5. Select the track at which the playback is to begin. Tracks in subdirectories are not played back.

### Playback lists

1.  "Media"
2. "USB device"
3. "Playlists"
4. Select the playback list.

### Changing the track



Press button.

A switch is made to the previous/next track from the currently played one.

### Fast forward/reverse





Press and hold this button.

The current track is fast forwarded/rewound with increasing speed.

### Playback information

Information about the current track can be displayed, such as the artist and the name of the track. This information is stored in the audio file and does not have to match the file name of the track.

### Switching playback information on/off

1.  "Media"
2. "USB device"
3.  Press button.
4. "Show playback information"

### Random playback

Playback in random order can be selected for all tracks of the USB device or for the current play.

### Switching random playback for all tracks on/off

1.  "Media"
2. "USB device"
3.  Press button.
4. "All titles"

### Switching random playback for the current playback on/off

1.  "Media"
2. "USB device"
3.  Press button.
4. "Current playback"

## Apple iPod/iPhone port



The USB port is located at the front of the center console.

Use a flexible adapter cable for connecting, e.g., the original iPod/iPhone adapter cable. The Apple iPod/iPhone menu structure is supported by the USB audio interface.

### Track search

Music tracks can be searched in various ways.

- ▷ Track from the current playlist.
- ▷ Via playlists stored in the iPod/iPhone.
- ▷ Via the categories saved for the music tracks, e.g., type of music, artist, composer, album, track.
- ▷ In the media audio books and podcasts.

### Current playback

List of tracks that is currently being played. E.g., the list of tracks that was found in the track search or a playlist.

1. "Media"
2. "USB device"
3. "Current playback"
4. Select the track at which the playback is to begin.

### Playback lists

1. "Media"
2. "USB device"
3. "Playlists"

4. Select the playback list.
5. Select the track at which the playback is to begin.

### Categories

1. "Media"
2. "USB device"
3. Select the category.
  - ▷ "Genres"
  - ▷ "Artists"
  - ▷ "Composers"
  - ▷ "Albums"
  - ▷ "Titles"
  - ▷ "Audio books"
  - ▷ "Podcasts"
4. A-Z search to reduce the list to a beginning letter to be entered.
5. Select the track at which the playback is to begin.

### Changing the track

About the radio:



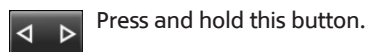
Via the buttons on the steering wheel:



A switch is made to the previous/next track from the currently played one.

### Fast forward/reverse

About the radio:



Via the buttons on the steering wheel:





Press and hold this button.

The current track is fast forwarded/rewound with increasing speed.

### Random playback

The tracks of the current playback are played back in random order.

### Switching random playback on/off

1.  "Media"
2. "USB device"
3.  Press button.
4. "Random"





**CONNECT ME.**



**AT A GLANCE**

**CONTROLS**

**DRIVING TIPS**

**ENTERTAINMENT**

**COMMUNICATION**

**MOBILITY**

**REFERENCE**

# BLUETOOTH HANDS-FREE SYSTEM

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## THE CONCEPT

Mobile phones can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth. After the mobile phones are paired once, they are recognized automatically when the ignition is switched on. As soon as they are inside the vehicle they can be operated via the radio and via the buttons on the steering wheel.

## HINTS



Using the mobile phone while driving  
Make entries only when traffic and road conditions allow. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle's occupants and other traffic. ◀

Certain functions may need to be enabled by the mobile phone provider or service provider.

At high temperatures, the charge functions of the mobile phone can be limited under certain circumstances, and some functions are no longer executed.

Do not operate a mobile phone that is connected to the vehicle on the mobile phone keypad, as this may lead to a malfunction.

When the mobile phone is used via the vehicle, refer to the operating manual of the mobile phone.

## APPROVED MOBILE PHONES



Accurate information about which mobile phones are supported with a Bluetooth interface is available at [www.mini.com/connectivity](http://www.mini.com/connectivity).

These approved mobile phones, with a certain software version, support the vehicle functions described below.

Malfunctions may occur with other mobile phones or software versions.

### Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

The vehicle identification number and software part number are needed to determine which mobile phones are supported by the mobile phone installation package. The software version of the mobile phone may also be required.

1.  "Telephone"
2.  Press button.
3. "Bluetooth® info"
4. "System information"

## PAIRING/UNPAIRING THE MOBILE PHONE

### Requirements

- ▷ The mobile phone is compatible.
- ▷ The mobile phone is ready for operation.

- ▷ The ignition is switched on.
- ▷ Bluetooth connection on the vehicle and on the mobile phone activated.
- ▷ Bluetooth presets may need to be made on the mobile phone, e.g., for a connection without confirmation or visibility, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.
- ▷ Set Bluetooth passkey for one-time use in the logon procedure.
- ▷ Vehicle is stationary.

### Bluetooth activation/deactivation


1.  "Telephone"
2.  Press button.
3. "Bluetooth®"

### Pairing and connecting



#### Pairing the mobile phone

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other traffic, only pair the mobile phone while the vehicle is stationary. ◀

1.  "Telephone"
2. A mobile phone has not yet been paired: "OK"  
A mobile phone has been paired: "Bluetooth®"
3. A mobile phone has not yet been paired: the Bluetooth name of the vehicle is shown on the display.  
A mobile phone has not yet been paired: "Add new phone". The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is shown on the display.
4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display. Select this.

5. Enter the same passkey on the mobile phone and on the display  
Or  
Compare the control number on the display with the control number in the display of the mobile phone and confirm.

Four mobile phones can be logged in on the vehicle, and one mobile phone can be connected to the vehicle.


### Following the initial pairing

Mobile phone is connected to the vehicle after a brief time.



The phone book entries stored on the SIM card or in the mobile phone are transferred to the vehicle.

Specific settings may be necessary in some mobile phones, e.g., authorization or a secure connection; refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

### Connecting a particular mobile phone

1.  "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth®"
3. Select the mobile phone that is to be connected.

### Unpairing the mobile phone

1.  "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth®"
3. Highlight any mobile phone that is to be removed.
4.  Press button.
5. "Remove device" or "Remove all devices"

### What to do if...

Information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page 162.

The mobile phone could not be paired or connected.

- ▷ Is Bluetooth activated in the vehicle and on the mobile phone? Activate Bluetooth.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the mobile phone and on the radio.
- ▷ Did it take longer than 30 seconds to enter the passkey? Repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ Do the control numbers on the mobile phone and vehicle match? Repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone? Delete connections to other devices.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone in power-save mode or does it have only a limited remaining battery life? Charge the mobile phone.

The mobile phone no longer reacts?

- ▷ Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- ▷ Ambient temperature too high or too low? Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

No or not all phone book entries are displayed, or they are incomplete.

- ▷ Transmission of the entries is not yet complete.
- ▷ It is possible that only the phone book entries from the mobile phone or from the SIM card are transmitted.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries being stored is too high.

The phone connection quality is poor.

- ▷ It may be possible to adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone.
- ▷ Adjust the volume of the microphone and loudspeakers separately.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline or the service center.


## CONTROLS

### Adjusting the volume

During an active call, turn the left knob on the radio until the desired volume is selected.

### Automatic volume control

The automatic volume control can only be adjusted during an active conversation.

1.  "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired setting: "Microphone" or "Loudspeak."
5. Adjusting: press and turn right button.
6. Storing: press right button.

### Incoming call

#### Receiving calls

If the number of the caller is stored in the phone book and is transmitted by the network, the name of the contact is displayed. Otherwise, only the phone number or "Unknown caller" is displayed.

#### Accepting a call

##### About the radio

 "Accept"

##### Via the button on the steering wheel




Press button.

##### Via the instrument cluster

"Accept"

## Rejecting a call

### About the radio

 "Reject"

### Via the instrument cluster

"Reject"

## Ending a call

### About the radio

 "End call ()"

### Via the button on the steering wheel





Press button.

### Via the instrument cluster

"End call"

## Dialing a number

1.  "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Enter numbers using the right rotary knob.
4.  Select the symbol.

## Calls with multiple parties

### Accepting a second call

If a second call is received during an ongoing call, a call waiting signal sounds.

 "Accept"

The second call is accepted and the current call is put on hold.

### Establishing a second call

Establish an additional call during an active call.


Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

- ▷ "Phone book"
- ▷ "Outgoing calls"
- ▷ "Received calls"


The first call is put on hold.

### Switching between two calls, hold call

You can switch between two calls.


 Select line with symbol in order to switch between the conversations.

 Active conversation.

 Call on hold.

### Establishing/ending a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2.  "Conference call"

When terminating the conference call, both calls are ended. If one call is terminated by another party, the other call is continued if needed.

### Muting the microphone

When a call is active, the microphone can be muted.

 "Mute microphone"

The muted microphone is automatically muted:

- ▷ When a new connection is established.
- ▷ If using call-switching to switch between call parties.

### DTMF suffix dialing



DTMF suffix dialing can be used for gaining access to network services or for controlling devices, e.g., to make a remote inquiry of an answering machine. The DTMF code is needed for this purpose. The DTMF code is only available during an active call.

1. "Keypad dialing"
2. Enter DTMF code.


## Favorites

Up to 12 phone numbers can be stored in the Favorites. Only the occupied places of the Favorites list are displayed.


### Storing Favorites

1.  "Telephone"
2. "Favorites"
3.  "Add favorite"
4. Select the list from which the entry is to be added:
  - ▷ "Phone book"
  - ▷ "Outgoing calls"
  - ▷ "Received calls"
5. Select entry from list and desired phone number.
6. Insert and select the cursor at the desired place in the Favorites.


### Move favorite

1. Highlight the desired favorite.
2.  Press button and "Move favorite".  
Or  
Press the right button, and select the phone number.
3. Insert and select the cursor at the desired place in the Favorites.

### Remove from Favorites

1. Highlight the desired favorite.
2.  Press button.
3. "Remove from favorites"

### Deleting Favorites

1.  Press button.
2. "Delete favorites"
3. "OK"


## Phone book

### General information




The telephone accesses the contacts stored in the mobile phone. All contacts for which a telephone number is entered are displayed. Maximally 4 phone numbers per contact can be displayed.

### Displaying

Phone book entries are automatically transmitted from the mobile phone to the vehicle, depending on the mobile phone. Fig. 4 Entries in the phone book: "Keyword search"


1.  "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

The symbols show how the entries are stored on the mobile phone.

Symbol	Meaning
	Mobile phone number.
	Home phone number.
	Business phone number.

### Selecting the sorting order of the names


The phone book entries can be displayed in different sequences. Depending on how the contacts are stored in the mobile phone, the sorting order of the names may differ from the selected sorting order.

1.  Press button.
2. "Display: ""Last/First name" or "First/Last name"
3. "First name Last name" or "Last name, First name"

### Calling

1. Select contact.
2. Select the desired phone number.

### Add phone numbers to Favorites


1. Mark the entry from the list.
2.  Press button and "Add to favorites".  
Or  
Press the right button, and select the phone number.
3. Select the desired phone number as needed.
4. Insert and select the cursor at the desired place in the Favorites.

### Redialing

The list of the last 20 numbers of the mobile phone selected are displayed.


1.  "Telephone"
2. "Redial"


### Add phone numbers to Favorites

1. Mark the entry from the list.
2.  Press button and "Add to favorites".  
Or  
Press the right button, and select the phone number.
3. Select the desired phone number as needed.
4. Insert and select the cursor at the desired place in the Favorites.

### Dialing the number via the instrument cluster

This is possible when there is no active call.

1.  Press button on the steering wheel.  
The last numbers selected are displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. If necessary, select another number.


3.  Press the key again to establish the connection.

### Received calls

The list of the 20 last received or missed calls of the cell phone are displayed.

1.  "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"

### Add phone numbers to Favorites

1. Mark the entry from the list.
2.  Press button and "Add to favorites".  
Or  
Press the right button, and select the phone number.
3. Select the desired phone number as needed.
4. Insert and select the cursor at the desired place in the Favorites.

### Hands-free system

#### General information

Calls that are being made on the hands-free system can be continued on the mobile phone and vice versa.

#### From the mobile phone to the hands-free system

Calls that were begun outside of the Bluetooth range of the vehicle can be continued on the hands-free system with the ignition switched on.

Depending on the mobile phone, the system automatically switches to the hands-free system.

If the system does not switch over automatically, follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

### From the hands-free system to the mobile phone

Calls that are made on the hands-free system can in some cases be continued on the mobile phone; this depends on the mobile phone.

Follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.







**MOVE ME.**

**AT A GLANCE**

**CONTROLS**

**DRIVING TIPS**

**ENTERTAINMENT**

**COMMUNICATION**

**MOBILITY**

**REFERENCE**

# REFUELING

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Observe the fuel recommendation, refer to page 174, prior to refueling.



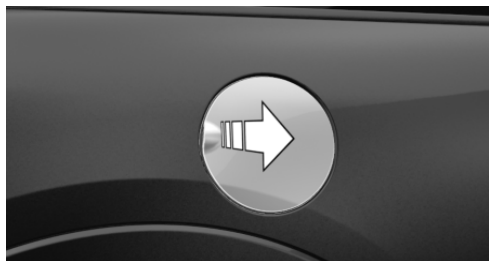
Refuel promptly

Refuel no later than at a range of 30 miles/50 km or engine operation might fail and damage might occur. ◀

## FUEL LID

### Opening

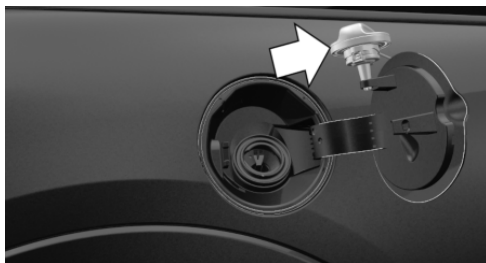
1. Grasp the fuel filler flap at the rear edge and open it.



2. Turn the tank lid counterclockwise.



3. Place the tank lid in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



### Closing

1. Fit the lid and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

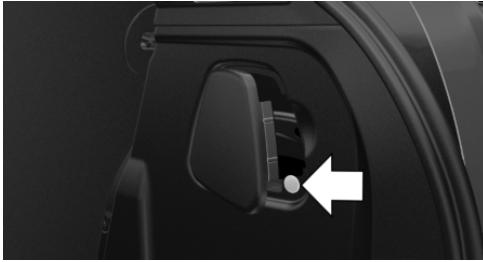


Do not pinch the retaining strap

Do not pinch the retaining strap attached to the lid; otherwise, the lid cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape. ◀

### Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

In the event of an electrical malfunction, e.g.





Remove the cover.

Pull the green knob with the fuel pump symbol, arrow. This releases the fuel filler flap.

## OBSERVE THE FOLLOWING WHEN REFUELING

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

 Do not overfill the fuel tank  
Do not overfill the fuel tank; otherwise fuel may eslide, causing harm to the environment and damaging the vehicle. ◀

 Handling fuels  
Observe safety regulations posted at the gas station. ◀

# FUEL

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## FUEL RECOMMENDATION

### Note



General fuel quality

Even fuels that conform to the specifications can be of low quality. This may cause engine problems, for instance poor engine start-up behavior, poor handling and/or poor performance. Switch gas stations or use a brand name fuel with a higher octane rating. ◀

### Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.



Refuel only with unleaded gasoline without metallic additives.

Do not refuel with any leaded gasoline or gasoline with metallic additives, e. g. manganese or iron, as this can cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter and other components. ◀

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should satisfy the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.



Do not use a fuel with a higher percentage of ethanol

Do not use a fuel with a higher ethanol percentage than recommended or one with other types of alcohol, e.g. M5 to M100; otherwise this could damage the engine and fuel supply system. ◀

### Recommended fuel grade

John Cooper Works:

Super Plus, 98 RON.

MINI recommends AKI 91.

### Minimum fuel grade

MINI recommends AKI 89.



Minimum fuel grade

Do not use any gasoline below the minimum fuel grade as this may impair engine performance. ◀

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.



Fuel quality

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environ-

mental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance. ◀

# WHEELS AND TIRES

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE

### Safety information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ The service life of the tires.
- ▷ Road safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.

### Checking the tire inflation pressure



Check the tire inflation pressure regularly. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed: at least twice a month and before a long trip. If you fail to observe this precaution, you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that may not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident. ◀

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

Tires heat up while driving, and the tire inflation pressure increases along with the tire's temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications

relate to cold tires or tires with the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after driving no more than 1.25 miles/2 km or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours.

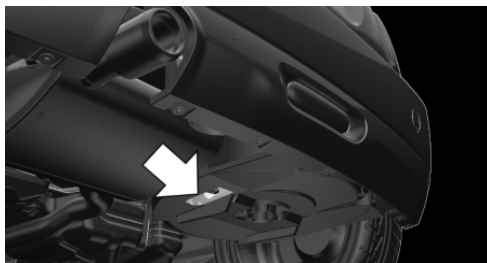
The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 1.45 psi/0.1 bar.

For Flat Tire Monitor: after correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

For Tire Pressure Monitor: after correcting the tire inflation pressure, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

- ▷ Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.
- ▷ Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor.

### Checking the inflation pressure of the emergency wheel



Located behind the bumper on the underside of the vehicle is an opening for checking the tire inflation pressure.

### Pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 177, contains all pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. Pressure specifications apply to approved tire sizes and recommended tire brands. This information can be obtained from your service center.



To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- ▷ Maximum permitted driving speed.

### Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 177, and adjust as necessary.



These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.



**Maximum permissible speed**

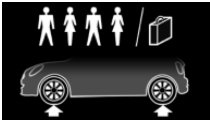
Do not exceed 100 mph/160 km/h; otherwise, tire damage and accidents may result. ◀

### Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

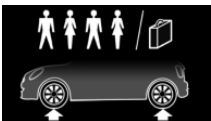
#### On 3-door models: COOPER

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S A/S Std		
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S Std		
175/65 R 15 84 H Std		
195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		
Compact wheel	Speed up to a max. of	
T 115/70 R 15 90 M	50 mph / 80 km/h	
	4.2 / 60	

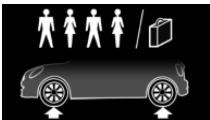
## On 3-door models: COOPER S

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC	2.6 / 38	2.4 / 35
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		

## On 3-door models: JOHN COOPER WORKS

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
185/50 R 17 86 H M +S XL RSC	2.9 / 42	2.7 / 39
205/45 R 17 88 V XL Std		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		

## On 5-door models: COOPER

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S A/S Std	2.5 / 36	2.3 / 33
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S Std		
175/65 R 15 84 H Std		
195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC	2.5 / 36	2.4 / 35
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC	2.6 / 38	2.6 / 38
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		
Compact wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

### Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

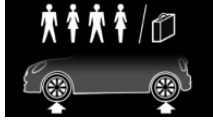


Speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

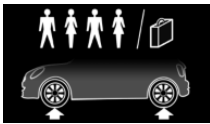
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur. ◀

### Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

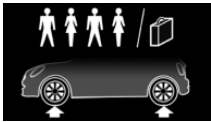
#### On 3-door models: COOPER

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S A/S Std	2.8 / 41	2.6 / 38
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S Std		
175/65 R 15 84 H Std		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		
Compact wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

**On 3-door models: JOHN COOPER WORKS**

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC	3.1 / 45	2.9 / 42
205/45 R 17 88 Y XL Std		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC	3.4 / 49	3.2 / 46

**On 5-door models: COOPER**

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S A/S Std	2.8 / 41	2.6 / 38
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S Std		
175/65 R 15 84 H Std		
195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC	2.8 / 41	2.8 / 41
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		
Compact wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
	4.2 / 60	

**TIRE IDENTIFICATION MARKS**

**Tire size**

205/45 R 17 84 V

205: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

17: rim diameter in inches

84: load rating, not for ZR tires

F: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

### Speed letter

T = up to 118 mph, 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph, 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph, 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph, 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph, 300 km/h

### Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 0115

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

0115: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

### Tire age

DOT ... 0115: the tire was manufactured in the 1st week of 2015.

### Recommendation

Regardless of wear and tear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

### Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

### DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the

laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



Temperature grade for this tire

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed. ◀

### RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 184, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

### M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

## TIRE TREAD

### Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

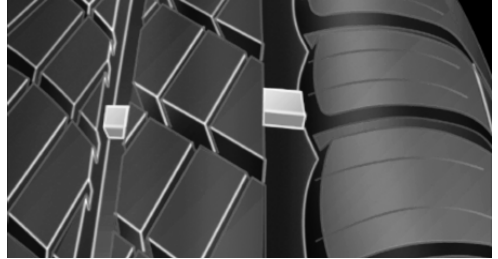
There is an increased danger of hydroplaning if the tread depth is less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

### Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm.

Below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

### Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

They are marked on the side of the tire with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

## TIRE DAMAGE

### General information

Inspect your tires often for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

### Hints

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle defects:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations while driving.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can, e. g., be caused by driving over curbs, road damage, or similar things.

**In case of tire damage**

If there are indications of tire damage, reduce your speed immediately and have the rims and tires checked right away; otherwise, there is the increased risk of an accident.

Drive carefully to the nearest service center. If necessary, have the vehicle towed or transported there. Otherwise, tire damage can become life threatening for vehicle occupants and also other traffic. ◀

**Repair of tire damage**

For safety reasons, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you do not have damaged tires repaired; they should be replaced. Otherwise, damage can occur as a result. ◀

## CHANGING WHEELS AND TIRES

### Mounting

**Information on mounting tires**

Have mounting and balancing performed only by a service center.

If work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. ◀

### Wheel and tire combination

Information on the correct wheel-tire combination and rim versions for your vehicle can be obtained from your service center.

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

**Approved wheels and tires**

You should only use wheels and tires that have been approved by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type; otherwise, e.g., despite having the same official size ratings, variations can lead to chassis contact and with it, the risk of severe accidents

The manufacturer of your vehicle cannot evaluate non-approved wheels and tires to determine if they are suited for use, and therefore cannot guarantee the operating safety of the vehicle. ◀

### Recommended tire brands



For each tire size, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends certain tire brands. These can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

With proper use, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling.

### New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

### Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.



### Retreaded tires

Possibly substantial variations in the design and age of the tire casing structures can limit service life and have a negative impact on road safety. ◀

### Winter tires

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

### Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then a respective symbol is displayed in your field of vision. You can obtain this sign from the tire specialist or from your service center.



### Maximum speed for winter tires

Do not exceed the maximum speed for the respective winter tires; otherwise, tire damage and accidents can occur. ◀

### Run-flat tires

If you are already using run-flat tires, for your own safety you should replace them only with the same kind. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Your service center will be glad to advise you.

### Rotating wheels between axles

Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions.

The tires can be rotated between the axles to achieve even wear. Your service center will be glad to advise you.

After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct if needed.

### Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

## RUN-FLAT TIRES

### Label



RSC label on the tire sidewall.

The wheels are composed of tires that are self-supporting to a limited degree.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Continued driving with a damaged tire, refer to page [86](#).


Continued driving with a damaged tire, refer to page [82](#).

### Changing run-flat tires

For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Your service center will be glad to advise you.



## REPAIRING A FLAT TIRE

 Safety measures in case of a breakdown  
Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.

Switch on the hazard warning system.

Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.

Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.

If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations. ◀

## MOBILITY SYSTEM

### The concept


With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed quickly to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

### Hints

- ▶ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- ▶ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 in/4 mm or more.
- ▶ Contact the nearest service center if the tire cannot be made drivable.

- ▶ If possible, do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire.
- ▶ Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- ▶ The use of a sealant can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if needed.

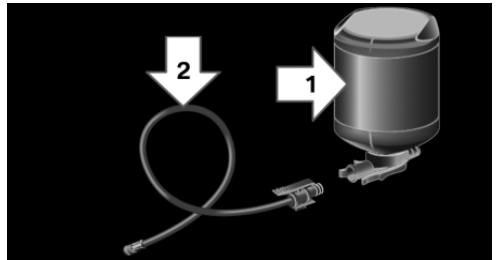
 Enclosed areas

Do not let the engine run in enclosed areas, since breathing in exhaust fumes may lead to loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. ◀

### Storage

The Mobility System is located under the cargo floor panel.

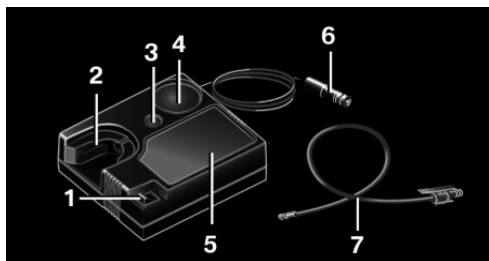
### Sealant container



- ▶ Sealant container, arrow 1.
- ▶ Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

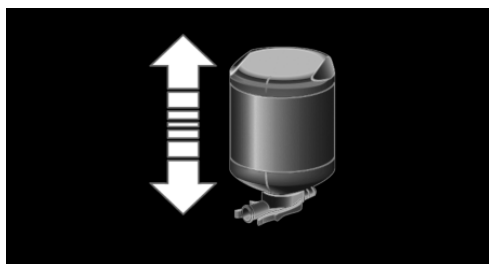
## Compressor



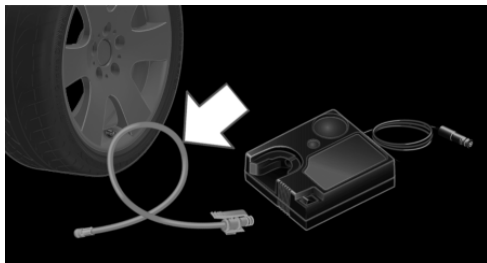
- 1 On/off reel
- 2 Holder for bottle
- 3 Reduce inflation pressure
- 4 Inflation pressure dial
- 5 Compressor
- 6 Connector/cable for socket
- 7 Connection hose — stowed in the bottom of the compressor

## Filling the tire with sealant

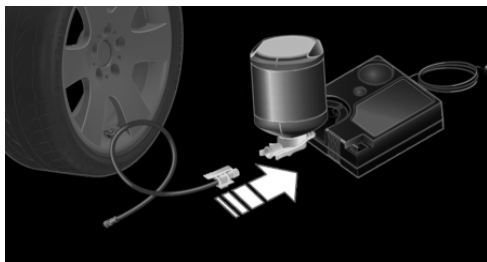
1. Shake the sealant container.



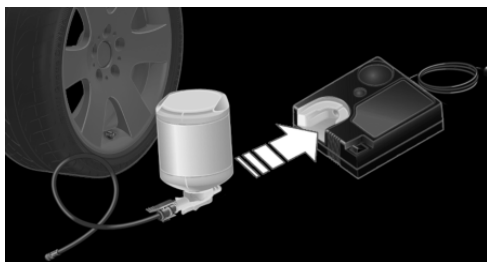
2. Take the connection hose completely out of the compressor housing. Do not kink the hose.



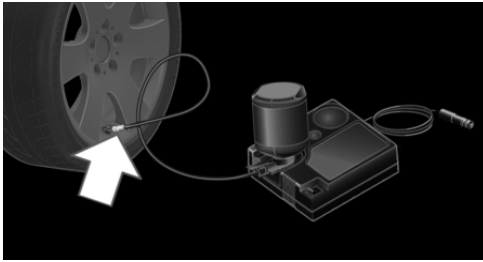
3. Attach the connection hose to the connector of the sealant container, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Slide the sealant container upright into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



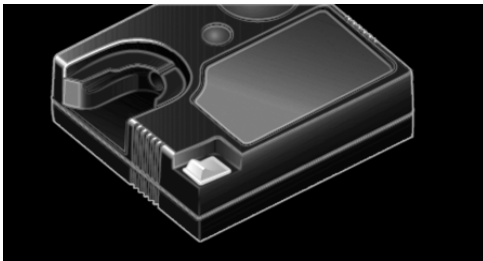
- Screw the connection hose onto the tire valve of the defective wheel.



- With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into a power socket inside the vehicle.



- With the ignition turned on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.



Let the compressor run for approx. 3 to 8 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.5 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.



Switch off the compressor after 10 minutes

Do not allow the compressor to run longer than 10 minutes; otherwise, the device will overheat and may be damaged. ◀

If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar is not reached:

- Switch off the compressor.
- Unscrew the filling hose from the wheel.
- Drive forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- Inflate the tire again using the compressor.  
If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar cannot be reached, contact your service center.

### Stowing the Mobility System

- Remove the connection hose of the sealant container from the wheel.
- Remove the connection hose from the sealant container.
- Wrap the empty sealant container and connection hose in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.
- Stow the Mobility System back in the vehicle.

### Distributing the sealant

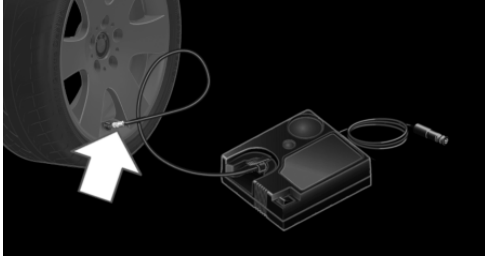
Immediately drive approx. 5 mls/10 km/h to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

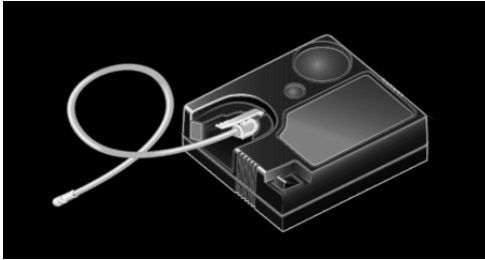
If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

### To correct the tire inflation pressure

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose onto the tire valve stem.



3. Attach the connection hose directly to the compressor.



4. Insert the connector into a power socket inside the vehicle.



5. Correct the tire inflation pressure to 2.5 bar.
  - ▷ Increase pressure: with the ignition turned on or the engine running, reel on the compressor.
  - ▷ To reduce the pressure: press the button on the compressor.

### Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 84.

Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 81.

Replace the defective tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System as soon as possible.

## SNOW CHAINS

### Fine-link snow chains

Only certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of your vehicle, classified as road-safe and approved.

Information about the approved snow chains are available from the service center.

### Use

Use only in pairs on the front wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- ▷ 175/65 R 15.
- ▷ 175/60 R 16.

John Cooper Works:

- ▷ 185/50 R 17

Follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Retighten as needed according to the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not initialize the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control if needed.

**Maximum speed with snow chains**

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

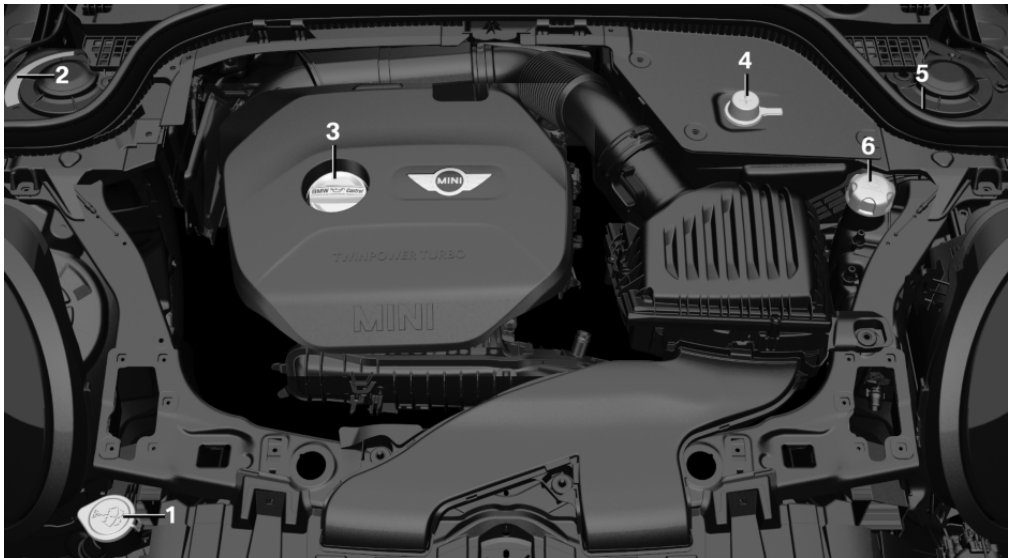
# ENGINE COMPARTMENT

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.


## IMPORTANT FEATURES IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Washer fluid reservoir</li> <li>2 Vehicle identification number</li> <li>3 Oil filler neck</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4 Jump-starting, positive terminal</li> <li>5 Jump-starting, negative terminal</li> <li>6 Coolant reservoir</li> </ul> |
|--|---|


## HOOD

### Hints

 Working in the engine compartment  
Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the necessary professional technical training.

If you are unfamiliar with the statutory guidelines, have any work on the vehicle performed only by a service center.

If work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. ◀

 Never reach into the engine compartment

Never reach into spaces or gaps in the engine compartment; otherwise, there is a risk of injury, e.g., from rotating or hot parts. ◀

 Fold down wiper arm

Before opening the hood, ensure that the wiper arms are against the windshield, or this may result in damage. ◀

## Opening the hood

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

Hood is unlocked




2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

Hood can be opened.

## Indicator/warning lights

When the hood is opened, a Check Control message is displayed.

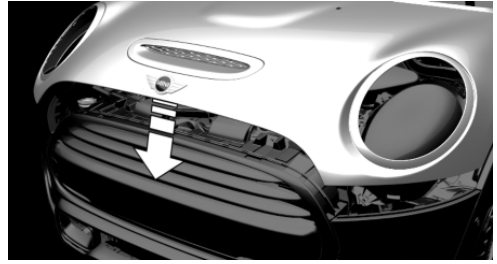
## Closing the hood

 Hood open when driving

If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving, pull over immediately and close it securely. ◀

 Danger of jamming

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result. ◀



Let the hood fall from approx. 16 in/40 cm, arrow.

The hood must audibly engage on both sides.

# ENGINE OIL

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## GENERAL INFORMATION

The engine oil consumption is dependent on the driving style and driving conditions.

The engine oil consumption can increase in case of, for example:

- ▷ Sporty driving.
- ▷ Break-in the engine.
- ▷ Idling of the engine.
- ▷ Usage of non-approved engine oil grades.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling.

The vehicle is equipped with electronic oil measurement.

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▷ Status display.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

## ELECTRONIC OIL MEASUREMENT

### Status display

#### The concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and shown on the radio display.



If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

#### Requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of driving. During a shorter trip, the status of the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

With frequent short-distance trips, perform a detailed measurement.

### Displaying the engine oil level

1.  Press button.
2.  "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

### Engine oil level display messages

Different messages appear on the display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

If the engine oil level is too low within the next 125 miles/200 km, add engine oil, refer to page 193.




Engine oil level too low

Add engine oil immediately; otherwise, an insufficient amount of engine oil could result in engine damage. ◀



Take care not to add too much engine oil.

-  Too much engine oil  
Have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, surplus engine oil can lead to engine damage. ◀

## Detailed measurement

### The concept

In the detailed measurement the engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level or an overfilling is detected, a check control message is displayed.

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

### Requirements

- ▶ Vehicle is on level road.
- ▶ Manual transmission: shift lever in neutral position, clutch and accelerator pedals not depressed.
- ▶ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▶ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

### Performing a detailed measurement

In order to perform a detailed measurement of the engine oil level:

Confirm message regarding engine oil level display.

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

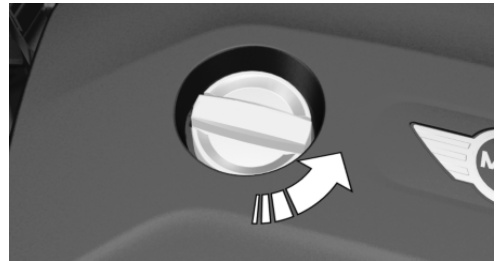
Time: approx. 1 minute.

## ADDING ENGINE OIL

### General information


Switch off the ignition and safely park the vehicle before engine oil is added.


### Oil filler neck




Only replenish the maximum engine oil amount of 1 US quart/liter if the signal is displayed in the instrument cluster.

After refilling, perform a detailed measurement, refer to page 193.


-  Adding engine oil  
Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km; otherwise, this may cause engine damage. ◀

-  Do not add too much engine oil  
When too much engine oil is added, immediately have the vehicle checked, otherwise, this may cause engine damage. ◀

-  Protect children  
Keep oil, grease, etc., out of reach of children and observe the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks. ◀

## ENGINE OIL TYPES TO ADD

### Hints

-  No oil additives  
Oil additives may lead to engine damage. ◀



Viscosity grades for engine oils

When selecting an engine oil, ensure that the engine oil belongs to one of the viscosity grades SAE 0W-40, SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-40, and SAE 5W-30 or malfunctions or engine damage may occur. ◀

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

### Suitable engine oil types

You can add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

Gasoline engine

BMW Longlife-01

BMW Longlife-01 FE

Further information regarding the oil specifications and viscosities of MINI engine oils can be inquired with the service center.

### Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Gasoline engine

API SM or superior oil rating

## ENGINE OIL CHANGE:

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you let the service center change the motor oil.


MINI recommends  
**MINI Original Engine Oil.**


# COOLANT

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## HINTS

 Danger of burns from hot engine  
Do not open the cooling system while the engine is hot; otherwise, escaping coolant may cause burns. ◀

 Suitable additives  
Only use suitable additives; otherwise, engine damage may occur. The additives are harmful to your health. ◀

Coolant consists of water and additives.  
Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your vehicle. Ask your service center for suitable additives.

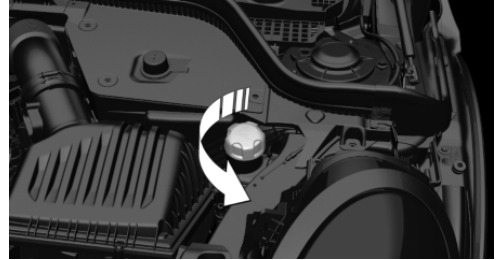
## COOLANT LEVEL

### Checking

There are yellow Min and Max marks in the coolant reservoir.

1. Let the engine cool.

2. Turn the coolant reservoir lid counterclockwise to unscrew and open it.

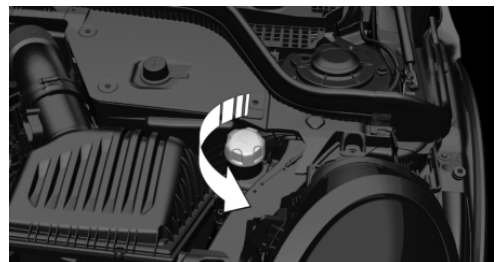


3. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



### Adding

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the coolant reservoir lid counterclockwise to unscrew and open it.



3. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.

4. Close cap.
5. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

## DISPOSAL



Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

# MAINTENANCE

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## MINI MAINTENANCE SYSTEM

The maintenance system indicates required maintenance measures, and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases scopes and intervals may vary according to the country-specific version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants and wear materials are calculated separately. Additional information is available from the service center.

## CONDITION BASED SERVICE CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of your vehicle. Based on this, Condition Based Service recognizes the maintenance requirements.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

Detailed information on service requirements, refer to page 65, can be displayed on the radio.

## For service data

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. Your service center will read out this data and suggest the right array of service procedures for your vehicle.

Therefore, hand your service specialist the remote control that you used most recently.

## Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a service center update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if needed, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

## SERVICE AND WARRANTY INFORMATION BOOKLET FOR US MODELS AND WARRANTY AND SERVICE GUIDE BOOKLET FOR CANADIAN MODELS

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

Maintenance and repair should be performed by your service center. Make sure to have regular maintenance procedures recorded in the vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models, and in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries are proof of regular maintenance.

## SOCKET FOR OBD ONBOARD DIAGNOSIS

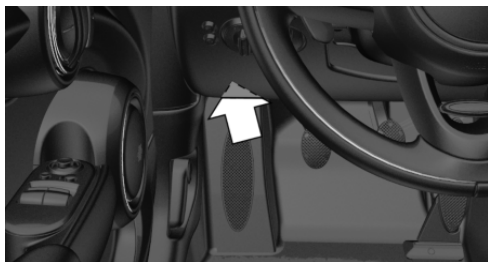
components, in particular the catalytic converter.

### Note

#### Socket for Onboard Diagnosis

The socket for onboard diagnostics may only be used by the service center or a workshop that operates in accordance with the specifications of the vehicle manufacturer with correspondingly trained personnel and other authorized persons. Otherwise, use may result in operating problems for the vehicle. ◀

### Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

### Emissions



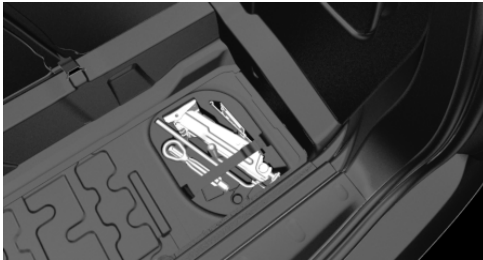
- ▷ The warning lamp lights up:  
Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- ▷ The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:  
This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.  
Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control

# REPLACING COMPONENTS

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## ONBOARD VEHICLE TOOL KIT



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the trough under the cargo area floor.

The warning triangle is located in the tailgate trim.

## WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT

### Hints



Do not fold down the wipers without wiper blades

Do not fold down the wipers if wiper blades have not been installed; this may damage the windshield. ◀

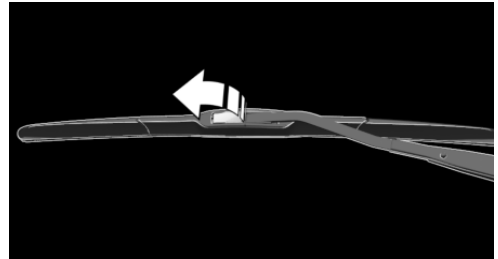


Folding down wipers before opening the hood

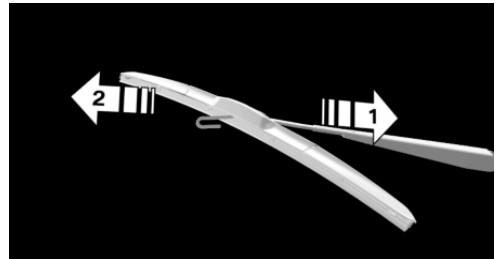
Before opening the hood, ensure that the wiper arms with the wiper blades are against the windshield to prevent damage. ◀

### Replacing the wiper blades

1. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
2. Open the wiper blade lock, arrow.



3. Pull the wiper blade down first out of the holder on the wiper arm, arrow 1. Then pull the wiper blade free from the holder of the wiper arm, arrow 2.



4. Insert and latch a new wiper blade in reverse order.
5. Fold down the wipers.

## Replace the rear wiper blade

1. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
2. Turn the wiper blade all the way back.



3. Continue turning the wiper blade all the way so that it pops out of the holder.
4. Press the new wiper blade into the holder until you hear it snap into place.
5. Fold the wipers in.

## LAMP AND BULB REPLACEMENT

### General information


Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to the service center if you are unfamiliar those or if they have not been described here.

You can obtain a selection of replacement bulbs at the service center.

### Hints

#### Lights and bulbs

 Danger of burns

Only change bulbs when they are cool; otherwise, there is a danger of getting burned. ◀



Working on the lighting system

When working on the lighting system, you should always reel off the lights affected to prevent short circuits.

To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer. ◀



Do not touch the bulbs

Do not touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare hands, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life.

Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base. ◀

### Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source.

These light-emitting diodes, which are related to conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.



Do not remove the covers

Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours; otherwise, irritation of the retina could result. ◀

### Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the external lights in cool or humid weather. When driving with the light switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

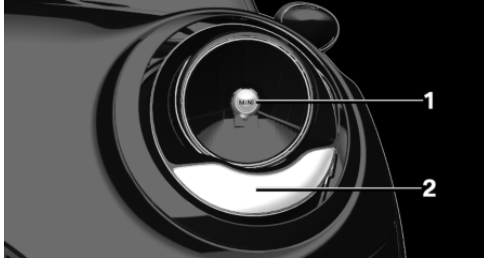
If the headlights do not dim despite driving with the light switched on, increasing humidity forms, e. g. water droplets in the light, have the service center check this.



## Front lights, bulb replacement

### Overview

#### Halogen headlights



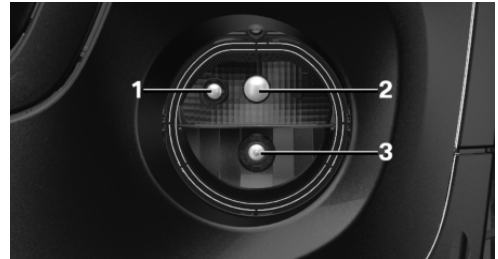
- 1 Low beams/high beams
- 2 Turn signal

#### LED headlights



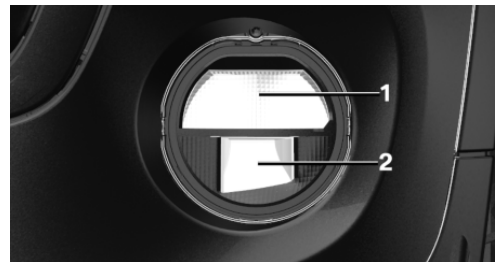
- 1 Daytime running lights
- 2 Low beams/high beams
- 3 Turn signal

### Bug light



- 1 Parking lights
- 2 Daytime running lights
- 3 Fog lights

#### LED bug light



- 1 Parking lights
- 2 Fog lights

#### LED low beams/LED high beams

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page [200](#).

The lights feature LED technology. Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

#### halogen low beams/halogen high beams

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page [200](#).

Bulbs: H4

1. Open the hood, refer to page 191.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow, and remove.



3. Pull off the connector.
4. Unclip spring clip, arrow, and fold down.



5. Remove the bulb from the headlight housing.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

### Turn signal

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 200.

Bulbs: PW24W

With white turn signal lights: PWY24W

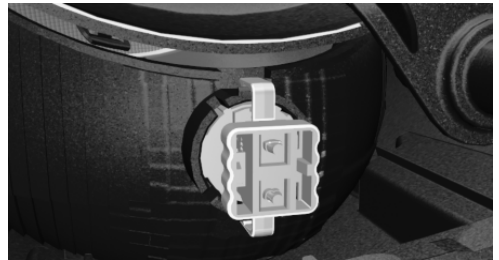
1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 1, and remove.



3. Unscrew the inner lid counterclockwise, and remove it.



4. Pull bulb holder out of the bulb housing; if needed, loosen it with small tilting movements if possible.



5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

## LED parking lights/LED fog lights

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 200.

The lights feature LED technology. Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

## Parking lights/fog lights/daytime running lights

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 200.

Bulbs:

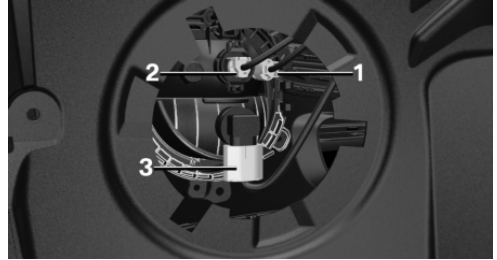
- ▶ Parking lights for halogen headlights: W5W  
Parking lights for LED headlights: W5W NBV
  - ▶ Daytime running light: PSX24W
  - ▶ Fog lamp: H8
1. Turn the steering wheel.
  2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 2, and remove.



3. Remove the corresponding connector.
4. ▶ Remove bulb holder of the parking lamp, arrow 1, by turning it counterclockwise.  
Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
- ▶ Remove the bulb holder of the daytime running lights, arrow 2, by pressing together the top and bottom latch mechanism.

For better accessibility, if needed, remove the bulb of the fog lamp beforehand.

- ▶ Turn the bulb holder of the fog lamp counterclockwise, arrow 3, and remove.



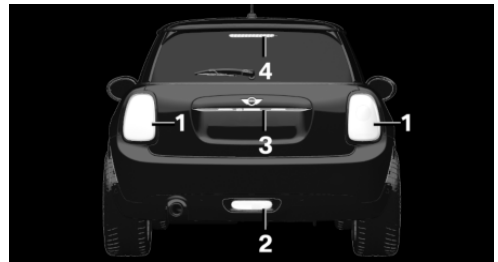
5. Insert the new bulbs and install the cover in the reverse order.

When installing the daytime running lights, audibly latch the bulb holder first at the bottom, then at the top.

## Tail lights, bulb replacement

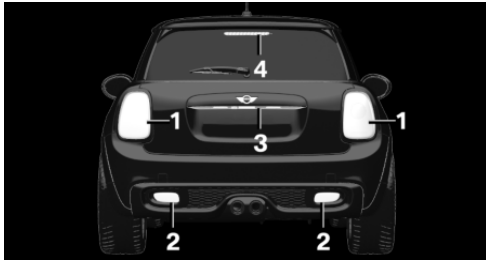
### Overview

### Vehicles with a rear fog lamp



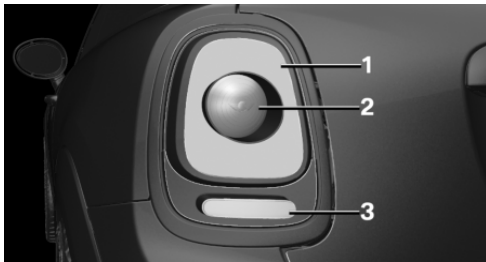
- 1 Side tail lights
- 2 Rear fog lamp
- 3 License plate lamp
- 4 Third brake lamp

### Vehicle with two rear fog lights



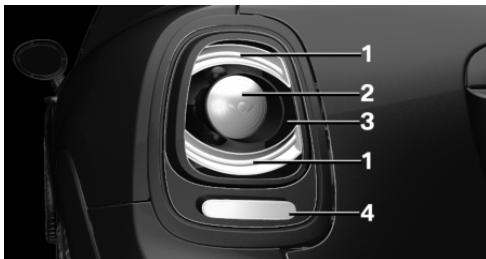
- 1 Side tail lights
- 2 Rear fog lights
- 3 License plate lamp
- 4 Third brake lamp

### Side tail lights



- 1 Brake lights/tail lights
- 2 Turn signal
- 3 Reversing lights

### Side LED tail lights



- 1 Tail lights
- 2 Turn signal

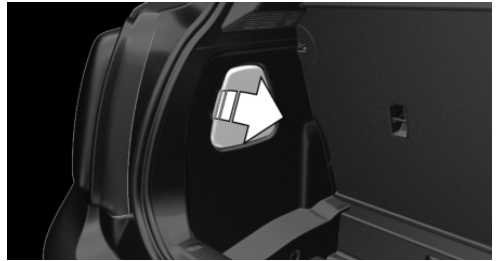
- 3 Brake light
- 4 Reversing lights

### Side tail lights

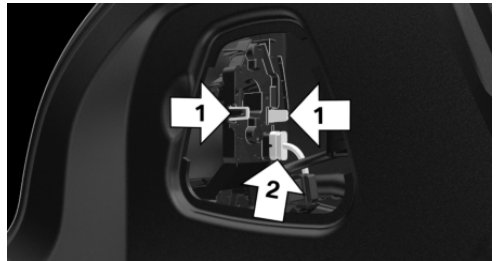
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 200.

Bulbs: P21W

1. Open the tailgate, refer to page 27.
2. Remove left or right cover.

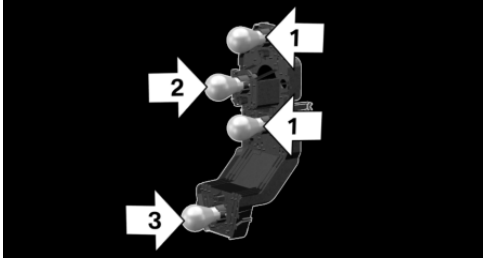


3. Through the opening, loosen the plug connector, arrow 2 on the bulb holder.  
Press the latches together, arrows 1, and remove the bulb holder.



4. Remove the bulb holder from the opening.
5. Press the defective bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
  - ▷ Arrow 1: brake lights/tail lights
  - ▷ Arrow 2: turn signal

- ▷ Arrow 3: reversing light



6. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder engages in all fasteners.

### Central brake lamp and license plate lamp

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 200.

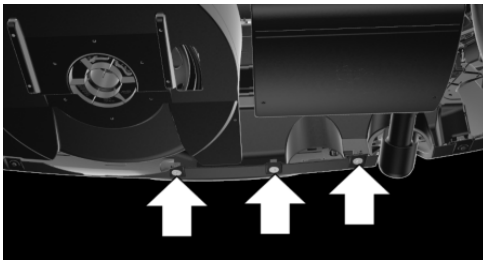
The lights feature LED technology. Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

### Vehicles with a rear lamp

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 200.

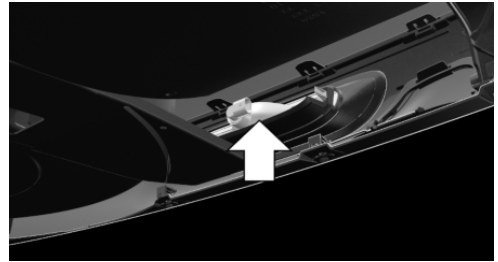
Bulbs: W16W

1. On vehicles with heat shield:  
Loosen 3 screws, arrow.



2. Push the heat shield forward and the bumper back in order to be able to reach the fog lamp.  
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.

The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.



4. Replace defective bulb.  
5. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

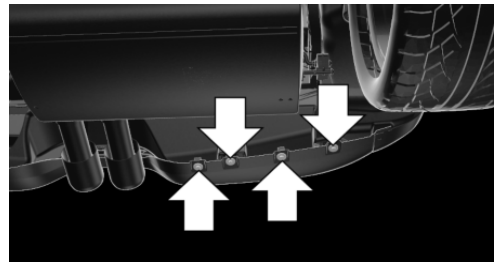
### Vehicle with two rear fog lights

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 200.

Bulbs: W16W

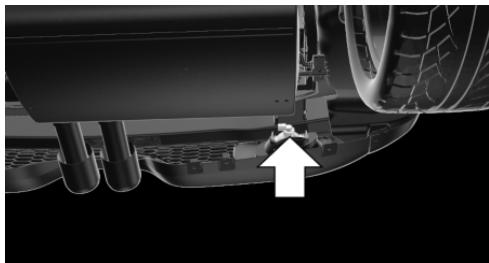
Left rear fog lamp:

1. On vehicles with heat shield:  
Loosen 3 screws, arrow.



2. Push the heat shield forward and the bumper back in order to be able to reach the fog lamp.  
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.

The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.



4. Replace defective bulb.
5. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

Right fog lamp:

1. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.

The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.



2. Replace defective bulb.
3. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

### Side turn signal, bulb replacement

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page [200](#).

Bulbs:

- ▷ With orange lens: W5W

- ▷ With white lens: WY5W diadem

1. Pull the turn signal housing at the top out of the catch, then unhook it at the bottom.



2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.



3. Replace the bulb.
4. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and install the turn signal housing.

First hook the turn signal housing to the bottom, then at the top press it into the latch.

## CHANGING WHEELS

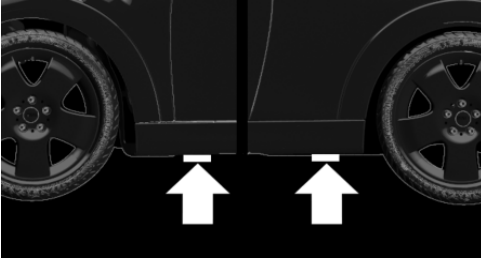
### Hints

When using run-flat tires or tire sealants, a tire does not need to be changed immediately in the event of pressure loss due to a flat tire.

Which is why no spare tire is available.

The tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from your service center.


## Jacking points for the vehicle jack




The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the positions shown.

## Emergency wheel

### Hints

 Safety measures in case of a breakdown or a wheel change

- ▶ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▶ Set the parking brake, and engage first gear or selector lever position P.
- ▶ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▶ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning lamp at an appropriate distance. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.
- ▶ Perform wheel change only on a flat, solid and slip-resistant surface. On soft or slippery ground, e.g., snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle or vehicle jack can slip away to the side.
- ▶ Do not place wood blocks or similar items under the vehicle jack; otherwise, it cannot reach its carrying capacity because of the restricted height.
- ▶ If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine; otherwise, a fatal hazard exists. ◀

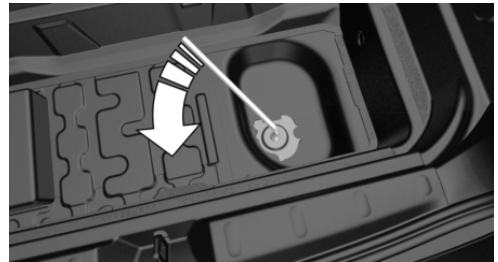
 Use the vehicle jack only for changing wheels

Use the vehicle jack only for changing wheels. Do not attempt to use it to jack up a different type of vehicle or cargo of any kind; otherwise, this could cause material damage and personal injury. ◀

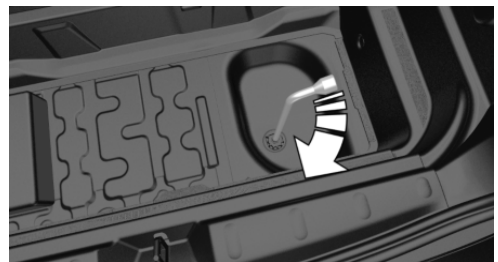
## Removing the emergency wheel

The emergency wheel is housed in a well on the underbody of the vehicle. The screw connection of the emergency wheel is located in the trunk under the floor mat, on the floor of the storage compartment for the wheel changing set.

1. Loosen the nut from the wheel change set using the wheel wrench.

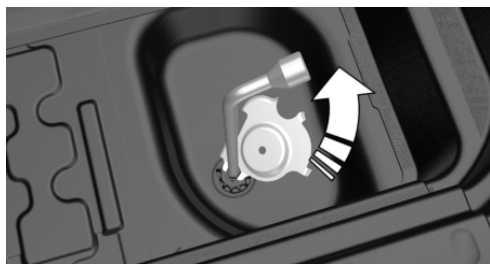


2. Remove the retaining plate.
3. Screw wheel lug wrench onto the thread and hold in place with one hand.





4. Unlock the locking hexagon of the emergency wheel well using the hexagon attached to retaining plate.



5. Lower the emergency wheel with the wheel wrench.
6. Unscrewing the wheel wrench
7. Pull out the well with emergency wheel under the vehicle toward the rear.
8. Remove the spacer and emergency wheel from the well.
9. Stow the well and spacer in the vehicle.

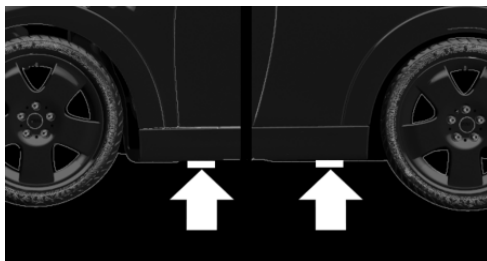
### Prepare wheel change

1. Follow the Safety instructions, refer to page 207.
2. With the wheel chock from the wheel change set, also secure the vehicle against rolling away at the front wheel of the opposite side.
3. Loosen the wheel lug bolts a half turn.

### Jacking up the vehicle

1. Place the vehicle jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel such that the vehicle jack foot is vertically beneath the vehicle

jacking point with the entire surface on the ground.



2. Insert the vehicle jack head in the rectangular recess of the jacking point for cranking it up.
3. Crank it up until the wheel in question lifts off of the ground.

### Wheel mounting

1. Unscrew the wheel lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two bolts.  
If original MINI light alloy wheels are not mounted, any accompanying lug bolts also have to be used.
3. Screw in the remaining the lug bolts and tighten all bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
4. Lower the vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.

### After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.



Check for secure seating of the lug bolts

For safety reasons, have the secure seating of the lug bolts checked with a calibrated torque wrench; otherwise, a safety hazard results from incorrectly tightened lug bolts. ◀

2. Stow the defective wheel in the trunk.




The defective wheel cannot be stored in the emergency wheel bracket because of its size.

3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 85.


Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 82.

5. Replace the damaged tires as soon as possible.

### Driving with emergency wheel

 Watch the speed when driving with the emergency wheel

Drive conservatively and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h; otherwise, changed driving characteristics such as reduced lane stability while braking, extended braking distance and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. ◀

 Mount one emergency wheel only  
Only a single emergency wheel may be mounted. Reinstall wheels and tires of the original size as quickly as possible; otherwise, there is a safety risk. ◀


## VEHICLE BATTERY

### Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery.

Your service center will be glad to advise you on questions regarding the battery.

### Battery replacement

 Use approved vehicle batteries only  
Only use vehicle batteries that have been approved for your vehicle by the manufacturer; otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and

systems or functions may not be fully available. ◀

After a battery replacement, have the battery registered on the vehicle by your service center to ensure that all comfort features are fully available and that any Check Control messages are no longer displayed.

### Charging the battery


#### General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

The battery may need to be charged in the following cases:

- ▷ When making frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for prolonged periods, longer than a month.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: when parked for long periods of time in selector lever position D, R or N.

#### Note

 Do not connect charging devices to the 12 volt socket in the vehicle

Do not connect battery chargers to the factory-installed 12 volt sockets in the vehicle as this may damage the vehicle battery due to an increased power consumption. ◀

### Starting aid terminals

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 212, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

### Power failure

After a temporary power loss, some equipment needs to be reset.

Individual settings need to be reprogrammed:

- ▷ Time: update.

- ▷ Date: update.

### Disposing of old batteries



Have old batteries disposed of by your service center or bring them to a recycling center.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

## FUSES

### Note



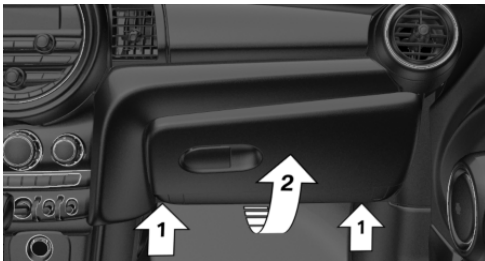
Replacing fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating; this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle. ◀

### Replacing fuse

The fuses are located in the passenger footwell under the dashboard.

1. To open, loosen screws, arrow 1.



2. Fold down the fuse holder, arrow 2.  
Information on the fuse types and locations is found on a separate sheet.
3. Replace the fuse in question.
4. The installation is done in reverse order from the removal.

# BREAKDOWN ASSISTANCE

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



The button is located above the radio.

## WARNING TRIANGLE



The warning triangle is located in the tailgate. To remove, loosen the brackets.

## FIRST AID KIT

The first aid kit is located in the cargo area. Some of the articles have a limited service life. Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

## JUMP-STARTING

### General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

### Hints



Do not touch live parts

To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running. ◀

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

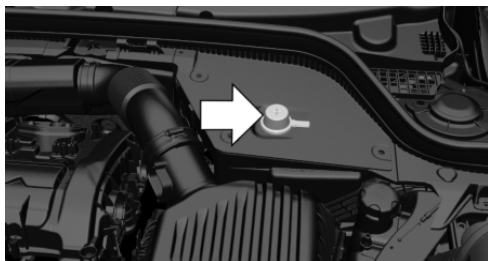
## Preparation

**!** Bodywork contact between vehicles  
Make sure that there is no contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is a danger of short circuits. ◀

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

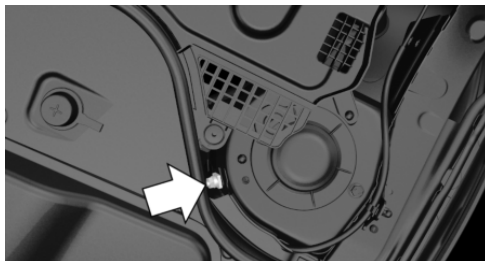
## Starting aid terminals

**!** Connecting order  
Connect the jumper cables in the correct order to prevent risk of injury from arcing. ◀



The so-called starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.

Open the lid of the starting aid terminal.



The body ground acts as the negative terminal of the battery.

## Connecting the cables

1. Pull off the lid of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

## Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.


If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge if needed.

## TOW-STARTING AND TOWING

### Note


 Tow-starting and towing  
For towing the vehicle turn, switch off the Intelligent Safety systems; otherwise malfunctions of the individual braking systems might lead to accidents. ◀

Switching off Intelligent Safety systems, refer to page 86.

### Steptronic transmission: transporting your vehicle

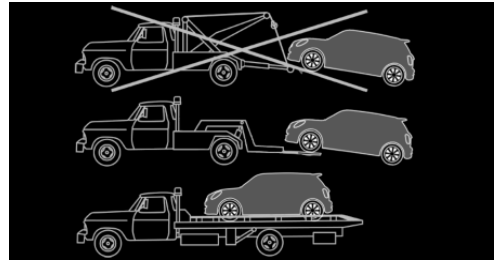
### Note

Your vehicle must not be towed if the front wheels are touching the ground. Therefore, contact a service center in the event of a breakdown.


 Tow the vehicle only with the front axle raised

Have the vehicle towed only with the front axle raised or transported on a loading platform; otherwise, damage may occur. ◀

### Tow truck



Have your vehicle transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

 Do not lift the vehicle  
Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result. ◀


Use tow fitting located in the front only for positioning the vehicle.

### Manual transmission

#### Observe before towing your vehicle


Gearshift lever in neutral position.

### Towing

 When the parking brake is blocked  
The parking brake cannot be released manually.

Do not tow the vehicle with the parking brake blocked, or the vehicle can be damaged.

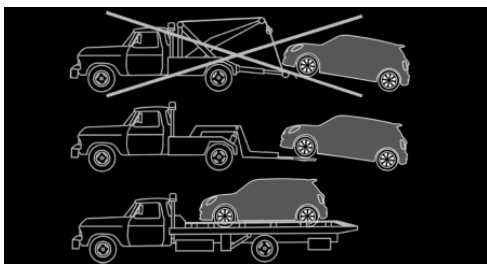
Contact your service center. ◀

 Follow the towing instructions  
Follow all towing instructions; otherwise, vehicle damage or accidents may occur. ◀


- ▷ Make sure that the ignition is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail lights, turn signals, and wipers may be unavailable.
- ▷ Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle tilted, as the front wheels could turn.

- ▷ When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. Consequently, more force needs to be applied when braking and steering.
- ▷ Larger steering wheel movements are required.
- ▷ The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response.

### Tow truck





Have your vehicle transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

-  Do not lift the vehicle
- Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result. ◀

### Towing other vehicles

#### Hints

-  Light towing vehicle
- The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. ◀
-  Attaching the tow bar/tow rope correctly
- Attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting; connecting it to other vehicle parts may cause damage. ◀

- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.
- ▷ If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

### Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.


Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

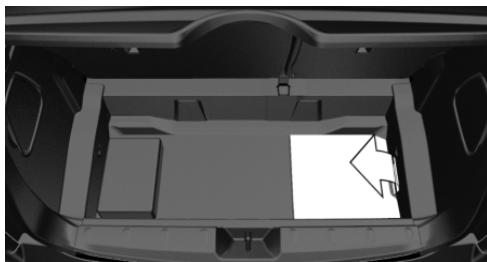
### Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on the vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.

-  Attaching the tow rope correctly
- Only secure the tow rope on the tow fitting; otherwise, damage can occur when it is secured on other parts of the vehicle. ◀

### Tow fitting



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the MINI. It is located under the

cargo floor panel, next to the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 199.



Tow fitting, information on use

- ▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- ▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g., do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Otherwise, damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur. ◀

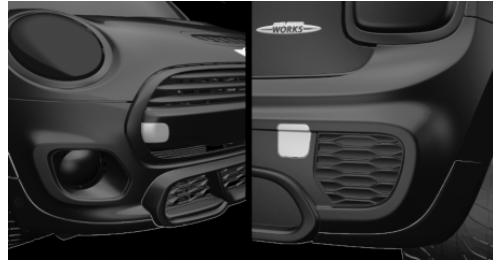
### Screw thread for tow fitting



COOPER/COOPER D/ONE/ONE D



COOPER S/COOPER SD



JOHN COOPER WORKS

Threaded holes for the tow fitting are located in the front and rear of the vehicle on the right side with respect to the direction of travel.

Push out the cover by pressing on the top edge.

### Tow-starting

#### Steptronic transmission

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Tow-starting the engine is not possible due to the Steptronic transmission.

Have the cause of the starting problems fixed.

#### Manual transmission

If possible, do not tow-start the vehicle but start the engine by jump-starting, refer to page 211. If the vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter, only tow-start while the engine is cold.

1. Switch on the hazard warning system and comply with local regulations.
2. Ignition, refer to page 47, on.
3. Engage third gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch pedal pressed and slowly release the pedal. After the engine starts, immediately press on the clutch pedal again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope, and switch off the hazard warning system.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

# CARE

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## CAR WASHES

### General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.


### Hints

 Steam jets or high-pressure washers

When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, hold them a sufficient distance away and use a maximum temperature of 140 °F/60 °C.

If the vehicle has a glass sunroof, ensure that a distance of at least 31.5 inches/80 cm is maintained. Holding them too close or using excessively high pressures or temperatures can cause damage or preliminary damage that may then lead to long-term damage.

Follow the user's manual for the high-pressure washer. ◀

 Cleaning sensors/camera lenses with high-pressure washers

When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors and camera lenses on the outside of the vehicle for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm. ◀

### Automatic car washes

#### Hints

- ▷ Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Make sure that the wheels and tires are not damaged by the transport mechanisms.
- ▷ Fold in the exterior mirrors; otherwise, they may be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.
- ▷ Unscrew the rod antenna.
- ▷ Deactivate the rain sensor, refer to page 53, to avoid unintentional wiper activation.
- ▷ In some cases, an unintentional alarm can be triggered by the interior motion sensor of the alarm system. Follow the instructions on avoiding an unintentional alarm, refer to page 31.

 Guide rails in car washes

Avoid car washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm; otherwise, the vehicle body could be damaged. ◀

### Before driving into a car wash

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll in a car wash, take the following steps:

Manual transmission:

1. Drive into the car wash.
2. Shift to neutral.



3. Switch the engine off.
4. Switch on the ignition.

Steptronic transmission:

1. Drive into the car wash.
2. Engage selector lever position N.
3. Press the Start/Stop button to reel off the engine.

In this way, the ignition remains switched on, and two Check-Control messages are displayed.

A signal sounds when you leave the vehicle while in selector lever position N.

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal is sounded when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

To start the engine:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

## Headlights

- ▷ Do not rub dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleansers.
- ▷ Soak areas that have been dirtied e. g., from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.
- ▷ Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

## After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced and corrosion of the brake discs can occur.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

## VEHICLE CARE

### Car care products

MINI recommends using cleaning and care products from MINI, since these have been tested and approved.



#### Car care and cleaning products

Follow the instructions on the container.

When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows.

Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles.

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. ◀

### Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your car care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

### Leather care

Remove dust from the leather often, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.


Suitable care products are available from the service center.

### Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, e.g., with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

 Damage from Velcro® fasteners

Open Velcro® fasteners on pants or other articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed. ◀

### Caring for special components

#### Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disk.

#### Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

#### Rubber components

Aside from water, treat only with rubber cleansers.

When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing car care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

#### Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

#### Plastic components


These include:

- ▷ Imitation leather surfaces.
- ▷ Roofliner.
- ▷ Lamp lenses.
- ▷ Instrument cluster cover.
- ▷ Matt black spray-coated components.
- ▷ Painted parts in the interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen cloth lightly with water.


Do not soak the roofliner.

 No cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents

Do not use cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such; this could lead to surface damage. ◀

#### Safety belts


Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

 Chemical cleaning  
Do not clean chemically; this can destroy the webbing. ◀

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the reels to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

## Carpets and floor mats

 No objects in the area around the pedals  
Keep floor mats, carpets, and any other objects out of the pedal area; otherwise, the function of the pedals could be impeded while driving and create the risk of an accident.

Do not place additional floor mats over existing mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be properly attached to floor.

Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed for cleaning, e.g. ◀


Floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.


If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.


## Sensor/camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

## Displays/Screens

 Cleaning displays and screens  
Do not use any chemical or household cleaning agents; otherwise, surfaces can be affected. ◀

 Keeping out moisture  
Keep all fluids and moisture away from the unit; otherwise, electrical components can be damaged. ◀

 Avoid pressure  
Avoid pressing too hard when cleaning and do not use abrasive materials; otherwise, damage can result. ◀

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

## Long-term

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Additional information is available from the service center.



**FIND ME.**

**AT A GLANCE**

**CONTROLS**

**DRIVING TIPS**

**ENTERTAINMENT**

**COMMUNICATION**

**MOBILITY**

**REFERENCE**

# TECHNICAL DATA

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## NOTE

The technical data and specifications in this Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for example, due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be

found in the approval documents, on information signs on the vehicle or can be obtained from the service center.

The information in the vehicle documents always has priority.

## DIMENSIONS

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for example, a roof antenna,

roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for example, due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

### MINI 3-door

Width with mirrors	inches/mm	76.1/1,932
Width without mirrors	inches/mm	68.0/1,727
Height	inches/mm	55.7/1,414
Length		
Cooper	inches/mm	151.1/3,837
Cooper S	inches/mm	151.9/3,858
John Cooper Works	inches/mm	152.5/3,874
Wheelbase	inches/mm	98.2/2,495
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	35.4/10.8

MINI 5-door		
Width with mirrors	inches/mm	76.1/1,932
Width without mirrors	inches/mm	68.0/1,727
Height	inches/mm	56.1/1,425
Length		
Cooper	inches/mm	157.4/3,998
Cooper S	inches/mm	158.0/4,013
Wheelbase	inches/mm	101.1/2,567
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	36.2/11.02

## WEIGHTS

The values preceding the slash apply to vehicles with manual transmission; the values following

the slash apply to vehicles with Steptronic transmission.

MINI Cooper, 3-door		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs	3,565
	kg	1,617
Load	lbs	790/725
	kg	358/329
Approved front axle load	lbs	1,920/1,990
	kg	871/903
Approved rear axle load	lbs	1,725/1,685
	kg	782/764
Approved roof load capacity	lbs	132
	kg	60
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	8.7–34.0
	L	211–731

## MINI Cooper, 5-door

Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs	3,795
	kg	1,721
Load	lbs	885/820
	kg	401/372
Approved front axle load	lbs	1,995/2,065
	kg	905/937
Approved rear axle load	lbs	1,880/1,860
	kg	853/844
Approved roof load capacity	lbs	165
	kg	75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	13.1–40.7
	L	278–941

## MINI Cooper S, 3-door

Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs	3,620/3,650
	kg	1,642/1,656
Load	lbs	775/770
	kg	352/349
Approved front axle load	lbs	2,025/2,060
	kg	919/934
Approved rear axle load	lbs	1,690
	kg	767
Approved roof load capacity	lbs	132
	kg	60
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	8.7–34.0
	L	211–731



## MINI Cooper S, 5-door

Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs	3,860/3,900
	kg	1,751/1,769
Load	lbs	885
	kg	401
Approved front axle load	lbs	2,085/2,125
	kg	946/964
Approved rear axle load	lbs	1,880
	kg	853
Approved roof load capacity	lbs	165
	kg	75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	13.1–40.7
	L	278–941

## MINI John Cooper Works, 3-door

Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs	3,720/3,765
	kg	1,687/1,708
Load	lbs	775
	kg	352
Approved front axle load	lbs	2,065/2,105
	kg	937/955
Approved rear axle load	lbs	1,725
	kg	782
Approved roof load capacity	lbs	132
	kg	60
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	8.7–34.0
	L	211–731

## CAPACITIES

### MINI

Fuel tank, approx.

Cooper, Cooper S, John Cooper Works	US gal/liters	11.6/44
-------------------------------------	---------------	---------

# APPENDIX

Any updates to the Owner's Handbook for Vehicle are listed here.


Additional information on the description of the Head-up Display in the "Displays" chapter for John Cooper Works models:

## John Cooper Works: Sport displays in the Head-up Display

### General information

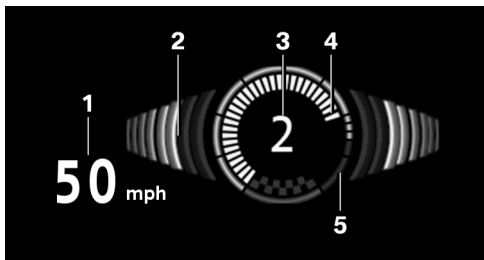
The sport displays in the Head-up Display assist with a sporty driving style.

### Switching on

1.  "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. "Sport displays"

With navigation system: if the sport displays are switched on, no navigation content will be displayed on the Head-up Display.

### Display



- 1 Speed
- 2 Shift point indicator
- 3 Gear display

- 4 Current engine speed
- 5 Warning field, speed

## Shift point indicator

### The concept


Shift point indicator in the Head-up Display indicates the optimum shifting point. Thus, with a sporty driving style, the best possible vehicle acceleration is achieved.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ Steptronic transmission:
  - Manual mode M/S and if necessary the Dynamic Traction Control DTC are activated.
- ▷ Press the gas pedal all the way down.

### Switching on

Shift point indicators are displayed in the Head-up if the sport displays, refer to page 91, are switched on.

1.  "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. "Sport displays"

### Display

Successive gray illuminated fields indicate the upcoming upshift moment.

As soon as the red fields light up, shift up immediately.

When the permitted maximum speed is reached, all shift point indicators flash.

When the maximum speed is exceeded, the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.







# LICENSE TEXTS AND CERTIFICATIONS

## BLUETOOTH

### Brazil



„Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.“

### Europe



Register model name: UK001

Product code: MRBE307A

### Hrvatski

Ovim, Alpine, izjavljuje da ovaj tip RADIO UKL zadovoljava bitne zahtjeve i ostale važeće odrednice, a sukladno Smjernici 1999/5/EC.

### Čeština

Alpine tímto prohlašuje, že tento RADIO UKL je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

### Dansk

Undertegnede Alpine erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr RADIO UKL overholder de væ-

sentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

### Deutsch

Hiermit erklärt Alpine, dass sich das Gerät RADIO UKL in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

### Eesti

Käesolevaga kinnitab Alpine seadme RADIO UKL vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

### English

Hereby, Alpine, declares that this RADIO UKL is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

### Español

Por medio de la presente Alpine declara que el RADIO UKL cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

### Ελληνικά

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Alpine ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ RADIO UKL ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

### Français

Par la présente Alpine déclare que l'appareil RADIO UKL est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

### Italiano

Con la presente Alpine dichiara che questo RADIO UKL è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

### Latviešu

Ar šo Alpine deklarē, ka RADIO UKL atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

### Lietuvių

Šiuo Alpine deklaruoja, kad šis RADIO UKL atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

### Nederlands

Hierbij verklaart Alpine dat het toestel RADIO UKL in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

### Malti

Hawnhekk, Alpine, jiddikjara li dan RADIO UKL jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Direttiva 1999/5/EC.

### Magyar

Alulírott, Alpine nyilatkozom, hogy a RADIO UKL megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.

### Polski

Niniejszym Alpine oświadcza, że RADIO UKL jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

### Português

Alpine declara que este RADIO UKL está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

### Slovensko

Alpine izjavlja, da je ta RADIO UKL v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

### Slovensky

Alpine týmto vyhlasuje, že RADIO UKL spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

### Suomi

Alpine vakuuttaa täten että RADIO UKL tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

### Svenska

Härmed intygar Alpine att denna RADIO UKL står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

### Íslenska

Hér með lýsir Alpine yfir því að RADIO UKL er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

### Norsk

Alpine erklærer herved at utstyret RADIO UKL er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

### Українська мова





## Taiwan

### 第十二條

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

### 第十四條

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

## USA (FCC) and Canada (IC)

Register model name: UK002

Product code: MRBE309A

### FCC CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC Rules and Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of this device.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux la partie 15 des règles de la FCC et CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

This equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it

should be installed and operated keeping the radiator at least 20cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements énoncées pour un environnement non contrôlé et respecte les règles les radioélectriques (RF) de la FCC lignes directrices d'exposition dans le Supplément C à OET65 et d'exposition aux fréquences radioélectriques (RF) CNR-102 de l'IC. Cet équipement émet une énergie RF très faible qui est considérée conforme sans évaluation de l'exposition maximale autorisée. Cependant, cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé en gardant une distance de 20 cm ou plus entre le dispositif rayonnant et le corps (à l'exception des extrémités : mains, poignets, pieds et chevilles).

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

### Canada

IC: 7812D-S180056

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### USA

FCC ID: KR5S180052056

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## South Korea

Continental S180052056

KCC-CRM-TAL-S180052056



## Europe

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH

Product type designation: S180052056

Intended use: Tire pressure monitoring system

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a):

Applied standard(s):

EN 60950-1:2006 + A11:2009 + A1:2010 + A12:2011

EN 62479:2010

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b):

Applied standard(s):

EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1 (2008-04)

EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2):

Applied standard(s):

EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 (2010-02)

EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 (2010-02)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:



## Hrvatski

Ovim, Continental Automotive GmbH, izjavljuje da ovaj tip TPMS zadovoljava bitne zahtjeve i ostale važeće odrednice, a sukladno Smjernici 1999/5/EC.

## Čeština

Continental Automotive GmbH tímto prohlašuje, že tento TPMS je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

## Dansk

Undertegnede Continental Automotive GmbH erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TPMS overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

## Deutsch

Hiermit erklärt Continental Automotive GmbH, dass sich das Gerät TPMS in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

## Eesti

Käesolevaga kinnitab Continental Automotive GmbH seadme TPMS vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

## English

Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH, declares that this TPMS is in compliance with the

essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

### Español

Por medio de la presente Continental Automotive GmbH declara que el TPMS cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

### Ελληνικά

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Continental Automotive GmbH ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΤΡΜΣ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

### Français

Par la présente Continental Automotive GmbH déclare que l'appareil TPMS est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

### Italiano

Con la presente Continental Automotive GmbH dichiara che questo TPMS è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

### Latviešu

Ar šo Continental Automotive GmbH deklarē, ka TPMS atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

### Lietuvių

Šiuo Continental Automotive GmbH deklaruoja, kad šis TPMS atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

### Nederlands

Hierbij verklaart Continental Automotive GmbH dat het toestel TPMS in overeenstemming is

met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

### Malti

Hawnhekk, Continental Automotive GmbH, jid-dikjara li dan TPMS jikkonforma mal-ħtigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid- Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

### Magyar

Alulírott, Continental Automotive GmbH nyilatkozom, hogy a TPMS megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.

### Polski

Niniejszym Continental Automotive GmbH oświadcza, że TPMS jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

### Português

Continental Automotive GmbH declara que este TPMS está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

### Slovensko

Continental Automotive GmbH izjavlja, da je ta TPMS v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

### Slovensky

Continental Automotive GmbH týmto vyhlasuje, že TPMS spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

### Suomi

Continental Automotive GmbH vakuuttaa täten että TPMS tyypinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

## Svenska

Härmed intygar Continental Automotive GmbH att denna TPMS står i överens-stämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som fram-går av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

## Íslenska

Hér með lýsir Continental Automotive GmbH yfir því að TPMS er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

## Norsk

Continental Automotive GmbH erklærer herved at utstyret TPMS er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

## Israel

- A. The use of this product does not need a wireless operation license.
- B. The product does not include an RF disturbance protection, and should not disturb other licensed products.
- C. It is forbidden to replace the antenna or to make any change in this product.

## Australia/New Zealand



N1374

## Russia

C-DE-ML05.H01232

## South Africa



TA-2013/831

## China

In accordance with the provisions on the Radio Regulations of the people's Republic of China, the radio transmission equipment, after examination, conforms to the provisions with its CMIIT ID: 2013DJ7376

## INFORMATION REGARDING OPEN SOURCE SOFTWARE LICENSES

The “lwIP – A Lightweight TCP/IP stack” included in some products is licensed under the “BSD licence”. A copy of that license in the English original version with a copyright notice, a disclaimer of warranty, and an exclusion of liability is included below. Copyright (c) 2001-2004 Swedish Institute of Computer Science. All rights reserved. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. 3. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AU-

THOR ``AS IS`` AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

# EVERYTHING FROM A TO Z

## INDEX

### A

ABS, Antilock Brake System **94**  
 ACC, Active Cruise Control **98**  
 Acceleration Assistant, refer to Launch Control **58**  
 Activated-charcoal filter **117**  
 Active Cruise Control, ACC **98**  
 Additives, oil **193**  
 Adjustments, seats/head restraints **35**  
 Adjustments, steering wheel **42**  
 After washing vehicle **217**  
 Airbags **78**  
 Airbags, indicator/warning light **79**  
 Air circulation, refer to Recirculated-air mode **113, 117**  
 Air conditioner **112**  
 Air, dehumidifying, refer to Cooling function **113, 116**  
 Air distribution, manual **113, 116**  
 Air flow, air conditioner **113**  
 Air flow, automatic climate control **116**  
 Air pressure, tires **176**  
 Air vents, refer to Ventilation **118**  
 Alarm system **30**  
 Alarm triggering **30**  
 Alarm, unintentional **31**  
 All around the center console **16**  
 All around the roofliner **17**  
 All around the steering wheel **14**  
 All-season tires, refer to Winter tires **184**

Alternating-code hand-held transmitter **120**  
 Alternative oil types **194**  
 Antifreeze, washer fluid **54**  
 Antilock Brake System, ABS **94**  
 Anti-slip control, refer to DSC **94**  
 Apple iPod/iPhone **155**  
 Approved axle load **223**  
 Approved engine oils, see Suitable engine oil types **194**  
 Ash tray **123**  
 Assistance when driving off **97**  
 Assist system, refer to Intelligent Safety **86**  
 AUTO intensity **116**  
 Automatic car wash **216**  
 Automatic climate control **115**  
 Automatic Curb Monitor **41**  
 Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags **80**  
 Automatic headlight control **74**  
 Automatic locking **29**  
 Automatic recirculated-air control **117**  
 Automatic transmission with Steptronic **55**  
 AUTO program, automatic climate control **116**  
 AUTO program, intensity **116**  
 Auto Start/Stop function **49**  
 AUX-IN port **154**  
 Average fuel consumption **68**  
 Average speed **68**  
 Axle loads, weights **223**

### B

Backrest curvature, refer to Lumbar support **36**  
 Balance **148**  
 Band-aids, refer to First aid kit **211**  
 Bar for tow-starting/towing **214**  
 Bass **148**  
 Battery replacement, vehicle battery **209**  
 Battery, vehicle **209**  
 Belts, safety belts **37**  
 Beverage holder, cupholder **128**  
 Bluetooth, refer to Hands-free system **162**  
 Bonus range, GREEN mode **143**  
 Bottle holder, refer to Cupholder **128**  
 Brake assistant **94**  
 Brake discs, break-in **134**  
 Brake pads, break-in **134**  
 Braking, hints **135**  
 Breakdown assistance **211**  
 Break-in **134**  
 Bug light **201**  
 Bulb replacement **200**  
 Bulb replacement, front **201**  
 Bulb replacement, rear **203**  
 Bulb replacement, side **206**  
 Bulbs and lights **200**  
 Button, RES **100**  
 Button, Start/Stop **47**  
 Bypassing, refer to Jump-starting **211**

- C**
- California Proposition 65 Warning 7
  - Camera-based cruise control, ACC 98
  - Camera lenses, care 219
  - Can holder, refer to Cupholder 128
  - Car battery 209
  - Car care products 217
  - Care, displays 219
  - Care, vehicle 217
  - Cargo area 124
  - Cargo area, adapting size 129
  - Cargo area, enlarging 125
  - Cargo area lid 27
  - Cargo area, storage compartments 129
  - Cargo cover 124
  - Cargo, securing 138
  - Cargo straps, securing cargo 138
  - Car key, refer to Remote control 22
  - Carpet, care 219
  - Car wash 216
  - Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 135
  - CBS Condition Based Service 197
  - Center armrest 128
  - Center console 16
  - Central instrument cluster, LED ring 70
  - Central locking system 26
  - Changes, technical, refer to Safety 7
  - Changing parts 199
  - Changing the station 150
  - Changing wheels 206
  - Changing wheels/tires 183
  - Chassis number, see vehicle identification number 9
  - Check Control 60
  - Checking the oil level electronically 192
  - Children, seating position 43
  - Children, transporting safely 43
  - Child restraint fixing system 43
  - Child restraint fixing system LATCH 44
  - Child restraint fixing systems, mounting 43
  - Child safety locks 46
  - Child seat, mounting 43
  - Child seats 43
  - Chrome parts, care 218
  - Chrono package, cockpit 70
  - Cigarette lighter 123
  - Cleaning, displays 219
  - Climate control 112, 115
  - Clock 64
  - Closing/opening via door lock 26
  - Closing/opening with remote control 24
  - Clothes hooks 129
  - Coasting 144
  - Coasting with engine decoupled, coasting 144
  - Coasting with idling engine 144
  - Combination reel, refer to Turn signals 52
  - Combination reel, refer to Wiper system 52
  - Comfort Access 27
  - Compartments in the doors 128
  - Compass 121
  - Compressor 185
  - Computer, refer to On-board computer 67
  - Condensation on windows 117
  - Condensation under the vehicle 136
  - Condition Based Service CBS 197
  - Confirmation signal 29
  - Control systems, driving stability 94
  - Convenient opening 24
  - Coolant 195
  - Cooling function 113, 116
  - Cooling, maximum 116
  - Cooling system 195
  - Cornering lamp 75
  - Corrosion on brake discs 136
  - Cosmetic mirror 123
  - Courtesy lamps during unlocking 24
  - Courtesy lamps with the vehicle locked 25
  - Cruise control 104
  - Cruise control, active 98
  - Cruising range 64
  - Cupholder 128
  - Current fuel consumption 65
- D**
- Damage, tires 182
  - Damping control, dynamic 95
  - Data, technical 222
  - Date 64
  - Date, radio 69
  - Date, setting on radio 69
  - Daytime running lights 74
  - Defrosting, refer to defrosting the windows 113
  - Defrosting, refer to Windows, defrosting 117
  - Defrosting the windows 113
  - Dehumidifying, air 113, 116
  - Digital clock 64
  - Digital compass 121
  - Digital radio 151
  - Dimensions 222
  - Dimmable exterior mirrors 41
  - Dimmable interior rearview mirror 42

- Direction indicator, refer to  
Turn signals **52**
- Display, electronic, instrument cluster **60**
- Display, engine temperature **68**
- Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting **76**
- Displays **59**
- Displays, cleaning **219**
- Disposal, coolant **196**
- Disposal, vehicle battery **210**
- Distance control, refer to PDC **106**
- Distance covered, setting units **69**
- Door lock, refer to Remote control **22**
- Drive mode, GREEN mode **142**
- Drive-off assistant **97**
- Drive-off assistant, refer to DSC **94**
- Driving Dynamics Control **96**
- Driving instruction, GREEN mode **144**
- Driving instructions, break-in **134**
- Driving mode **96**
- Driving notes, general **134**
- Driving stability control systems **94**
- Driving tips **134**
- DSC Dynamic Stability Control **94**
- DTC Dynamic Traction Control **95**
- Dynamic Damping Control **95**
- Dynamic Stability Control DSC **94**
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC **95**
- E**
- Electronic displays, instrument cluster **60**
- Electronic oil measurement **192**
- Electronic Stability Program ESP, refer to DSC **94**
- Emergency detection, remote control **23**
- Emergency release, fuel filler flap **172**
- Emergency start function, engine start **23**
- Emergency wheel, compact wheel, refer to Emergency wheel **207**
- Energy Control **65**
- Engine, automatic Start/Stop function **49**
- Engine, automatic switch-off **49**
- Engine compartment **190**
- Engine compartment, working in **190**
- Engine coolant **195**
- Engine idling when driving, coasting **144**
- Engine oil **192**
- Engine oil, adding **193**
- Engine oil additives **193**
- Engine oil change **194**
- Engine oil filler neck **193**
- Engine oil types, alternative **194**
- Engine oil types, approved **194**
- Engine start during malfunction **23**
- Engine start, jump-starting **211**
- Engine start, refer to Starting the engine **48**
- Engine stop **48**
- Engine temperature, display **68**
- Entering a car wash **216**
- Equipment, interior **119**
- Error displays, see Check Control **60**
- ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC **94**
- Exchanging wheels/tires **183**
- Exhaust system **135**
- Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature **41**
- Exterior mirrors **40**
- External start **211**
- External temperature display **64**
- External temperature warning **64**
- Eyes for securing cargo **138**
- F**
- Fader **148**
- Failure message, see Check Control **60**
- False alarm, refer to Unintentional alarm **31**
- Fan, refer to Air flow **113, 116**
- Filler neck for engine oil **193**
- Fine wood, care **218**
- First aid kit **211**
- Fitting for towing, see tow fitting **214**
- Flat tire, changing wheels **206**
- Flat Tire Monitor FTM **84**
- Flat tire, repairing **185**
- Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM **81**
- Flat tire, warning lamp **82, 85**
- Flooding **135**
- Floor carpet, care **219**
- Floor mats, care **219**
- Fogged up windows **113**
- Folding back rear seat backrests **125**
- Fold-out position, windshield wipers **54**
- Foot brake **135**



Formats, setting [69](#)  
 Front airbags [78](#)  
 Front-end collision warning with City Braking function [87](#)  
 Front fog lights [76](#)  
 front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation [80](#)  
 Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator lamp [80](#)  
 FTM Flat Tire Monitor [84](#)  
 Fuel [174](#)  
 Fuel consumption, current [65](#)  
 Fuel consumption, refer to Average fuel consumption [68](#)  
 Fuel filler flap [172](#)  
 Fuel gauge [64](#)  
 Fuel lid [172](#)  
 Fuel quality [174](#)  
 Fuel recommendation [174](#)  
 Fuel, tank capacity [226](#)  
 Fuse [210](#)

## G

Garage door opener, refer to Universal Integrated Remote Control [119](#)  
 Gasoline [174](#)  
 Gear change, Steptronic transmission [56](#)  
 Gear shift indicator [65](#)  
 General driving notes [134](#)  
 Glare shield [123](#)  
 Glass sunroof, refer to Panoramic glass sunroof [32](#)  
 Glove compartment [127](#)  
 Gong, volume equalization [148](#)  
 GREEN mode [142](#)  
 GREEN mode, bonus range [143](#)  
 GREEN mode indicator [142](#)  
 GREEN - program, driving dynamics [96](#)

GREEN tip [144](#)  
 Gross vehicle weight, approved [223](#)  
 Ground clearance [136](#)

## H

Halogen headlights [201](#)  
 Handbrake, refer to parking brake [51](#)  
 Hand-held transmitter, alternating code [120](#)  
 Hands-free system [162](#)  
 Hazard warning flashers [211](#)  
 HD Radio [151](#)  
 Head airbags [78](#)  
 Headlight control, automatic [74](#)  
 Headlight courtesy delay feature [74](#)  
 Headlight flasher [52](#)  
 Headlight glass [200](#)  
 Headlights, care [217](#)  
 Head restraints [35](#)  
 Head restraints, front [38](#)  
 Head restraints, rear [39](#)  
 Heavy cargo, stowing [138](#)  
 High-beam Assistant [75](#)  
 High beams [52](#)  
 High beams/low beams, refer to High-beam Assistant [75](#)  
 Hills [136](#)  
 Hill start assistant, refer to Drive-off assistant [97](#)  
 Hints [6](#)  
 Holder for beverages [128](#)  
 Homepage [6](#)  
 Hood [190](#)  
 Horn [14](#)  
 Hot exhaust system [135](#)  
 Hydroplaning [135](#)

## I

Ice warning, see External temperature warning [64](#)

Icy roads, see External temperature warning [64](#)  
 Identification marks, tires [180](#)  
 Identification number, see vehicle identification number [9](#)  
 Ignition key, refer to Remote control [22](#)  
 Ignition off [47](#)  
 Ignition on [47](#)  
 Illuminated ring, central instrument cluster [70](#)  
 Indication of a flat tire [82](#), [85](#)  
 Indicator lamp, see Check Control [60](#)  
 Individual air distribution [113](#), [116](#)  
 Individual settings, refer to Personal Profile [23](#)  
 Inflation pressure, tires [176](#)  
 Inflation pressure warning, tires [84](#)  
 Info display, refer to On-Board computer [67](#)  
 Initialize, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM [82](#)  
 Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM [85](#)  
 Instrument cluster [59](#)  
 Instrument cluster, electronic displays [60](#)  
 Instrument lighting [76](#)  
 Integrated key [22](#)  
 Intelligent Safety [86](#)  
 Intensity, AUTO program [116](#)  
 Interior equipment [119](#)  
 Interior lights [76](#)  
 Interior lights during unlocking [24](#)  
 Interior lights with the vehicle locked [25](#)  
 Interior motion sensor [31](#)  
 Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature [42](#)  
 Interior rearview mirror, compass [121](#)

Interior rearview mirror, manually dimmable [41](#)  
 Internet site [6](#)  
 Interval display, service requirements [65](#)  
 Interval mode [53](#)

**J**

Jacking points for the vehicle jack [207](#)  
 Joystick, Steptronic transmission [56](#)  
 Jump-starting [211](#)

**K**

Key/remote control [22](#)  
 Keyless Go, refer to Comfort Access [27](#)  
 Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile [23](#)  
 Kickdown, Steptronic transmission [56](#)  
 Knee airbag [79](#)

**L**

Lamp replacement [200](#)  
 Lamp replacement, front [201](#)  
 Lamp replacement, rear [203](#)  
 Lamp replacement, side [206](#)  
 Language, setting [69](#)  
 Lashing eyes, securing cargo [138](#)  
 LATCH child restraint system [44](#)  
 Launch Control [58](#)  
 Leather, care [217](#)  
 LED bug light [201](#)  
 LED headlights [201](#)  
 LED ring, central instrument cluster [70](#)  
 LEDs, light-emitting diodes [200](#)

License Texts and Certifications [231](#)  
 Light [73](#)  
 Light-alloy wheels, care [218](#)  
 Light-emitting diodes, LEDs [200](#)  
 Lighter [123](#)  
 Lighting [73](#)  
 Lights and bulbs [200](#)  
 Light switch [73](#)  
 Load [138](#)  
 Loading [137](#)  
 Lock, door [26](#)  
 Locking/unlocking via door lock [26](#)  
 Locking/unlocking with remote control [24](#)  
 Locking, automatic [29](#)  
 Locking, settings [29](#)  
 Lock, power window [32](#)  
 Locks, doors, and windows [46](#)  
 Low beams [73](#)  
 Low beams, automatic, refer to High-beam Assistant [75](#)  
 Lower back support, mechanical [36](#)  
 Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack [138](#)  
 Lumbar support, mechanical [36](#)

**M**

Maintenance [197](#)  
 Maintenance requirements [197](#)  
 Maintenance, service requirements [65](#)  
 Maintenance system, MINI [197](#)  
 Make-up mirror [123](#)  
 Malfunction displays, see Check Control [60](#)  
 Manual air distribution [113](#), [116](#)  
 Manual air flow [113](#), [116](#)  
 Manual mode, transmission [56](#)  
 Manual operation, door lock [26](#)  
 Manual operation, exterior mirrors [41](#)  
 Manual operation, fuel filler flap [172](#)  
 Manual operation, Park Distance Control PDC [107](#)  
 Manual transmission [55](#)  
 Manufacturer of the MINI [7](#)  
 Marking on approved tires [183](#)  
 Marking, run-flat tires [184](#)  
 Master key, refer to Remote control [22](#)  
 Maximum cooling [116](#)  
 Maximum speed, display [66](#)  
 Maximum speed, winter tires [184](#)  
 Medical kit [211](#)  
 Menu in instrument cluster [67](#)  
 Messages, see Check Control [60](#)  
 Microfilter [114](#), [117](#)  
 MID - program, driving dynamics [96](#)  
 MINI maintenance system [197](#)  
 Minimum tread, tires [182](#)  
 Mirrors [40](#)  
 Mobile communication devices in the vehicle [135](#)  
 Mobile phone [162](#)  
 Mobility System [185](#)  
 Mode, GREEN Mode [142](#)  
 Modifications, technical, refer to Safety [7](#)  
 Moisture in headlight [200](#)  
 Mounting of child restraint systems [43](#)  
 Multifunction steering wheel, buttons [14](#)

**N**

Neck restraints, front, refer to  
Head restraints **38**

Neck restraints, rear, refer to  
Head restraints **39**

New wheels and tires **183**

Nylon rope for tow-starting/  
towing **214**

**O**

OBD Onboard Diagnostics **198**

Octane rating, refer to Recommended fuel grade **174**

Odometer **64**

Oil **192**

Oil, adding **193**

Oil additives **193**

Oil change **194**

Oil change interval, service requirements **65**

Oil filler neck **193**

Oil types, alternative **194**

Oil types, approved **194**

Old batteries, disposal **210**

On-board computer **67**

Onboard Diagnostics  
OBD **198**

Onboard vehicle tool kit **199**

Opening/closing via door  
lock **26**

Opening/closing with remote  
control **24**

Optional equipment, standard  
equipment **6**

Outside air, refer to Automatic  
recirculated-air control **117**

Own safety **7**

**P**

Paint, vehicle **217**

Panoramic glass sunroof **32**

Parallel parking assistant **108**

Park Distance Control  
PDC **106**

Parked vehicle, condensation **136**

Parking aid, refer to PDC **106**

Parking assistant **108**

Parking brake **51**

Parking lights **73**

Passenger side mirror, tilting  
downward **41**

PDC Park Distance Control **106**

Pedestrian warning with city  
braking function **90**

Performance Control **95**

Personal Profile **23**

Phone **162**

Pinch protection system, glass  
sunroof **33**

Pinch protection system, windows **32**

Plastic, care **218**

Power failure **209**

Power windows **31**

Pressure, tire air pressure **176**

Pressure warning, tires **84**

Profile, refer to Personal Profile **23**

Protective function, glass sunroof **33**

Protective function, windows **32**

**R**

Radiator fluid **195**

Radio, AM/FM stations **149**

Radio, Apple iPod/iPhone **155**

Radio, AUX-IN port **154**

Radio, control elements **149, 154**

Radio, external devices **154**

Radio, FM/AM **149**

Radio, muting **149**

Radio-operated key, refer to  
Remote control **22**

Radio, overview **149, 154**

Radio ready state **47**

Radio, satellite radio **152**

Radio, save stations **151**

Radio, USB audio interface **155**

Rain sensor **53**

Rear fog lights **76**

Rear lights **203**

Rear luggage rack **139**

Rearview mirror **40**

Rear window defroster **114, 117**

Recirculated-air filter **117**

Recirculated-air mode **113, 117**

Recommended fuel grade **174**

Recommended tire brands **183**

Refueling **172**

Remaining range **64**

Remote control/key **22**

Remote control, blocking **23**

Remote control, malfunction **25**

Remote control, replacing the  
battery **22**

Remote control, universal **119**

Replacement fuse **210**

Replacing parts **199**

Replacing the battery, remote  
control **22**

Replacing wheels/tires **183**

Reporting safety defects **9**

RES button **100**

Reserve warning, refer to  
Range **64**

Resetting the tone settings **148**

Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor  
TPM **82**

Retaining straps, securing  
cargo **138**

Retreaded tires **183**

Roadside parking lights [73](#)  
 RON recommended fuel grade [174](#)  
 Roofliner [17](#)  
 Roof load capacity [223](#)  
 Roof-mounted luggage rack [138](#)  
 Rope for tow-starting/towing [214](#)  
 RSC Run Flat System Component, refer to Run-flat tires [184](#)  
 Rubber components, care [218](#)  
 Run-flat tires [184](#)

## S

Safe braking [135](#)  
 Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat [38](#)  
 Safety belts [37](#)  
 Safety belts, care [218](#)  
 Safety reel, windows [32](#)  
 Safety systems, airbags [78](#)  
 Satellite radio [152](#)  
 Saving fuel [141](#)  
 Screwdriver [199](#)  
 Screw thread for tow fitting [215](#)  
 Sealant [185](#)  
 Seat belts, refer to Safety belts [37](#)  
 Seat heating, front [37](#)  
 Seating position for children [43](#)  
 Seats [35](#)  
 Select a station [150](#)  
 Selecting a station manually [150](#)  
 Selection list in instrument cluster [67](#)  
 Selector lever, Steptronic transmission [56](#)  
 Sensors, care [219](#)

Service and warranty [8](#)  
 Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS [197](#)  
 Service requirements, display [65](#)  
 Settings and information [69](#)  
 Settings, locking/unlocking [29](#)  
 Settings, mirrors [40](#)  
 Shift paddles on the steering wheel [57](#)  
 Side airbags [78](#)  
 Signaling, horn [14](#)  
 Signals when unlocking [29](#)  
 Sitting safely [35](#)  
 Size [222](#)  
 Slide/tilt glass roof [32](#)  
 Snow chains [188](#)  
 Socket [123](#)  
 Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics [198](#)  
 Sound settings [148, 149](#)  
 Spare fuse [210](#)  
 Spare tire, refer to Emergency wheel [207](#)  
 Specified engine oil types [194](#)  
 Speed, average [68](#)  
 Speed limit detection, computer [69](#)  
 Speed limiter, display [66](#)  
 Speed Limit Information [66](#)  
 Speed warning [69](#)  
 Sport instruments, cockpit [70](#)  
 SPORT program, Dynamic Driving Control [96](#)  
 Sport program, transmission [56](#)  
 Stability control systems [94](#)  
 Start/stop, automatic function [49](#)  
 Start/Stop button [47](#)  
 Start function during malfunction [23](#)  
 Starting the engine [48](#)  
 Station, storing [150](#)  
 Status of Owner's Manual [6](#)  
 Steering wheel, adjusting [42](#)

Steptronic Sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission [55](#)  
 Steptronic transmission [55](#)  
 Stopping the engine [48](#)  
 Storage compartments [127](#)  
 Storage, tires [184](#)  
 Storing the vehicle [219](#)  
 Suitable engine oils [194](#)  
 Summer tires, tread [182](#)  
 Sun visor [123](#)  
 Supplementary text messages [63](#)  
 Switch for Dynamic Driving [96](#)  
 Switch, refer to Cockpit [14](#)  
 Symbols [6](#)

## T

Tachometer [64](#)  
 Tailgate [27](#)  
 Tailgate via remote control [25](#)  
 Tail lights [203](#)  
 Technical changes, refer to Safety [7](#)  
 Technical data [222](#)  
 Temperature, air conditioner [113](#)  
 Temperature, automatic climate control [115](#)  
 Temperature display for external temperature [64](#)  
 Temperature display, setting units [69](#)  
 Temperature, engine [68](#)  
 Tempomat, see Camera-based cruise control [98](#)  
 Terminal, starting aid [212](#)  
 Text messages, supplementary [63](#)  
 Theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system [30](#)  
 Thigh support [36](#)  
 Tilt alarm sensor [30](#)  
 Time, radio, setting time on the radio [69](#)

Tire damage [182](#)  
 Tire identification marks [180](#)  
 Tire inflation pressure [176](#)  
 Tire inflation pressure monitor, refer to FTM [84](#)  
 Tire Pressure Monitor TPM [81](#)  
 Tires, changing [183](#)  
 Tire sealant [185](#)  
 Tires, everything on wheels and tires [176](#)  
 Tires, run-flat tires [184](#)  
 Tire tread [182](#)  
 Tools [199](#)  
 Total vehicle weight [223](#)  
 Tow fitting [214](#)  
 Towing [213](#)  
 Tow-starting [213](#)  
 TPM Tire Pressure Monitor [81](#)  
 Traction control [95](#)  
 TRACTION drive mode, driving dynamics [95](#)  
 Transmission lock, releasing manually [57](#)  
 Transmission, manual transmission [55](#)  
 Transmission, see Steptronic transmission [55](#)  
 Transporting children safely [43](#)  
 Tread, tires [182](#)  
 Treble [148](#)  
 Triple turn signal activation [52](#)  
 Trip odometer [64](#)  
 Turn signal, front [201](#)  
 Turn signal, side [206](#)  
 Turn signals, operation [52](#)  
 Turn signals, rear, bulb replacement [203](#)

## U

Unintentional alarm [31](#)  
 Units [69](#)  
 Units, setting [69](#)  
 Universal remote control [119](#)

Unlock button, Steptronic transmission [56](#)  
 Unlocking/locking via door lock [26](#)  
 Unlocking/locking with remote control [24](#)  
 Unlocking, settings [29](#)  
 Updates made after the editorial deadline [6](#)  
 Upholstery care [218](#)  
 USB audio interface [155](#)  
 USB interface [124](#)

## V

Vanity mirror [123](#)  
 Vehicle battery [209](#)  
 Vehicle battery, replacing [209](#)  
 Vehicle, break-in [134](#)  
 Vehicle care [217](#)  
 Vehicle features and options [6](#)  
 Vehicle identification number [9](#)  
 Vehicle jack [207](#)  
 Vehicle paint [217](#)  
 Vehicle storage [219](#)  
 Vehicle wash [216](#)  
 Ventilation [118](#)  
 VIN, see vehicle identification number [9](#)

## W

Warning and indicator lamps, see Check Control [60](#)  
 Warning displays, see Check Control [60](#)  
 Warning messages, see Check Control [60](#)  
 Warning triangle [211](#)  
 Warranty [7](#)  
 Washer fluid [54](#)  
 Washer nozzles, windshield [54](#)  
 Washer system [52](#)

Washing, vehicle [216](#)  
 Water on roads [135](#)  
 Weights [223](#)  
 Welcome lamps during unlocking [24](#)  
 Welcome lights [74](#)  
 Wheels, changing [183](#)  
 Wheels, everything on wheels and tires [176](#)  
 Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM [84](#)  
 Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM [81](#)  
 Window defroster, rear [114](#), [117](#)  
 Windows, powered [31](#)  
 Windshield defroster [114](#), [117](#)  
 Windshield washer fluid [54](#)  
 Windshield washer nozzles [54](#)  
 Windshield washer system [52](#)  
 Windshield wiper [52](#)  
 Windshield wipers, fold-out position [54](#)  
 Winter storage, care [219](#)  
 Winter tires, suitable tires [184](#)  
 Winter tires, tread [182](#)  
 Wiper blades, replacing [199](#)  
 Wiper fluid [54](#)  
 Wiper system [52](#)  
 Wood, care [218](#)  
 Wrench [199](#)





01 40 2 961 140 ue

**DRIVE ME.**